Compiler Construction I

Dr. Michael Petter

SoSe 2019
Organizing

- Master or Bachelor in the 6th Semester with 5 ECTS
- Prerequisites
  - Basic Programming: **Java**
  - *Introduction to Theory of Computation*
  - Basic Principles: Operating Systems and System Software
  - Automata Theory
- Delve deeper with
  - Virtual Machines
  - Programm Optimization
  - Programming Languages
  - Labcourse Compiler Construction

**Materials:**

- TTT-based lecture recordings
- The slides
- Related literature list online (⇒ Wilhelm/Seidl/Hack Compiler Design)
- Tools for visualization of abstract machines (VAM)
- Tools for generating components of Compilers (JFlex/CUP)
Dates:
Lecture: Thursdays 14:15-15:45
Tutorial: Mondays 14:15-15:45, Wednesdays 8:30-10:00

Exam:
- **One Exam** in the summer, *none* in the winter
- planed date: 13.8.19 (no guarantee!)
- Successful mini seminar earns 0.3 bonus

Mini Seminars in week 30:
A 15min talk on a specific compiler related topic, e.g.

1. Introduction to parser combinators
2. Parsing Expression Grammars / Packrat Parsers
3. LALR(k)
4. Pager's LR(k)
5. GLR / Tomita parser
6. Follow-Automata
7. Antimirov-Automata
8. LL(*) and LL-regular grammars
9. Semidicision Procedures for Grammar Uniqueness
10. Island Grammars
11. Learning CFGs with LZW and Sequitur
12. General First \( \mathcal{F} \)/Follow \( \mathcal{F} \) with Constraint Solvers
13. Reference Attribute Grammars with JastAdd
14. Extensible Grammars with PPG
15. Language Processing with Kiama/Scala
Preliminary content

- Regular expressions and finite automata
- Specification and implementation of scanners
- Reduced context free grammars and pushdown automata
- Top-Down/Bottom-Up syntax analysis
- Attribute systems
- Typechecking
- Codegeneration for register machines
- Register assignment
- Optional: Basic optimization
Topic:

Introduction
Extremes of Program Execution

Interpretation:
- Program
- Input
- Interpreter
- Output

Compilation:
- Program
- Code
- Compiler
- Machine
- Output
Interpretation vs. Compilation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interpretation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• No precomputation on program text necessary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⇒ no/small startup-overhead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• More context information allows for specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aggressive optimization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compilation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Program components are analyzed once, during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preprocessing, instead of multiple times during</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>execution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⇒ smaller runtime-overhead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Runtime complexity of optimizations less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important than in interpreter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
general Compiler setup:
general Compiler setup:
The **Analysis-Phase** consists of several subcomponents:

- Program code
The Analysis-Phase consists of several subcomponents:

- **Scanner**
  - **Token-Stream**
  - lexicographic Analysis:
    - Partitioning in tokens

Program code
The Analysis-Phase consists of several subcomponents:

- **Scanner**
  - Token-Stream
  - lexicographic Analysis:
    - Partitioning in tokens
- **Parser**
  - Syntax tree
  - syntactic Analysis:
    - Detecting hierarchical structure
The **Analysis-Phase** consists of several subcomponents:

- **Scanner**
  - Partitioning in tokens

- **Parser**
  - Detecting hierarchical structure

- **Type Checker**
  - Infering semantic properties
Topic:

Lexical Analysis
The Lexical Analysis

Program code → Scanner → Token-Stream
The Lexical Analysis

xyz + 42

Scanner

xyz + 42
A **Token** is a sequence of characters, which together form a unit. Tokens are subsumed in **classes**. For example:

- **Names (Identifiers)** e.g. `xyz, pi, ...`
- **Constants** e.g. `42, 3.14, "abc", ...`
- **Operators** e.g. `+`, ...
- **Reserved terms** e.g. `if, int, ...`
The Lexical Analysis

A Token is a sequence of characters, which together form a unit. Tokens are subsumed in classes. For example:

→ Names (Identifiers) e.g. \( xyz, \pi, \ldots \)
→ Constants e.g. \( 42, 3.14, "abc", \ldots \)
→ Operators e.g. \( +, \ldots \)
→ Reserved terms e.g. \( \text{if}, \text{int}, \ldots \)
Classified tokens allow for further **pre-processing**:

- **Dropping** irrelevant fragments e.g. Spacing, Comments, ...
- **Collecting Pragmas**, i.e. directives for the compiler, often implementation dependent, directed at the code generation process, e.g. OpenMP-Statements;
- **Replacing** of Tokens of particular classes with their meaning / internal representation, e.g.
  - → **Constants**;
  - → **Names**: typically managed centrally in a Symbol-table, maybe compared to reserved terms (if not already done by the scanner) and possibly replaced with an index or internal format (⇒ **Name Mangling**).
The Lexical Analysis

Discussion:

- Scanner and Siever are often combined into a single component, mostly by providing appropriate callback actions in the event that the scanner detects a token.
- Scanners are mostly not written manually, but generated from a specification.
The Lexical Analysis - Generating:

... in our case:

Specification → Generator → Scanner
The Lexical Analysis - Generating:

... in our case:

0 | [1-9][0-9]*

Specification of Token-classes: Regular expressions;
Generated Implementation: Finite automata + X
Chapter 1:
Basics: Regular Expressions
Regular Expressions

Basics

- Program code is composed from a finite alphabet $\Sigma$ of input characters, e.g. Unicode
- The sets of textfragments of a token class is in general regular.
- Regular languages can be specified by regular expressions.
Regular Expressions

**Basics**
- Program code is composed from a finite alphabet $\Sigma$ of input characters, e.g. Unicode.
- The sets of textfragments of a token class is in general regular.
- Regular languages can be specified by regular expressions.

**Definition Regular Expressions**

The set $E_{\Sigma}$ of (non-empty) regular expressions is the smallest set $E$ with:

- $\epsilon \in E$ (a new symbol not from $\Sigma$);
- $a \in E$ for all $a \in \Sigma$;
- $(e_1 \mid e_2), (e_1 \cdot e_2), e_1^* \in E$ if $e_1, e_2 \in E$.

Stephen Kleene
Regular Expressions

... Example:

$((a \cdot b^*) \cdot a)$

$(a \mid b)$

$((a \cdot b) \cdot (a \cdot b))$
Regular Expressions

... Example:

\[(a \cdot b^*) \cdot a\]
\[(a \mid b)\]
\[((a \cdot b) \cdot (a \cdot b))\]

Attention:

- We distinguish between characters \(a, 0, $,...\) and Meta-symbols \((, |, )...,\)
- To avoid (ugly) parantheses, we make use of Operator-Precedences:

\[\ast > \cdot > |\]

and omit “⋅”
Regular Expressions

... Example:

\[
\begin{align*}
((a \cdot b^*) \cdot a) \\
(a \mid b) \\
((a \cdot b) \cdot (a \cdot b))
\end{align*}
\]

Attention:
- We distinguish between characters \(a, 0, $, \ldots\) and Meta-symbols (, |, ), …
- To avoid (ugly) parantheses, we make use of Operator-Precedences:

\[
* > \cdot > |
\]

and omit “·”
- Real Specification-languages offer additional constructs:

\[
e? \equiv (\epsilon \mid e) \\
e^+ \equiv (e \cdot e^*)
\]

and omit “\(\epsilon\)”. 

16 / 287
Regular Expressions

Specification needs **Semantics**

...Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Semantics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(abab)</td>
<td>{abab}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a \mid b)</td>
<td>\{a, b\}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ab^* a)</td>
<td>{ab^n a \mid n \geq 0}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For \(e \in E \Sigma\) we define the specified language \([e] \subseteq \Sigma^*\) inductively by:

\[
\begin{align*}
[e] &= \{\varepsilon\} \\
[a] &= \{a\} \\
[e^*] &= ([e])^* \\
[e_1 \mid e_2] &= [e_1] \cup [e_2] \\
[e_1 \cdot e_2] &= [e_1] \cdot [e_2]
\end{align*}
\]
Keep in Mind:

- The operators \((\_)^*, \cup, \cdot\) are interpreted in the context of sets of words:
  
  \[
  (L)^* = \{w_1 \ldots w_k \mid k \geq 0, w_i \in L\}
  \]
  
  \[
  L_1 \cdot L_2 = \{w_1w_2 \mid w_1 \in L_1, w_2 \in L_2\}
  \]
Keep in Mind:

- The operators $(\_)^*, \cup, \cdot$ are interpreted in the context of sets of words:
  \[
  (L)^* = \{ w_1 \ldots w_k \mid k \geq 0, w_i \in L \} \\
  L_1 \cdot L_2 = \{ w_1 w_2 \mid w_1 \in L_1, w_2 \in L_2 \}
  \]

- Regular expressions are internally represented as annotated ranked trees:

```
(\ab|\epsilon)^* =>
```

Inner nodes: Operator-applications; Leaves: particular symbols or $\epsilon$. 
Example: Identifiers in Java:

le = [a-zA-Z\_\$]
di = [0-9]
Id = {le} ({le} | {di})*

Remarks:
"le" and "di" are token classes.
Defined Names are enclosed in "{", "}"
Symbols are distinguished from Meta-symbols via \\.
Example: Identifiers in Java:

le = [a-zA-Z\_\$]\n
di = [0-9]\n
Id = \{le\} (\{le\} | \{di\})^\n
Float = \{di\}^\((\.\{di\}|\{di\}.)\{di\}^\((e|E)(\+|\-)?\{di\}^+)?\)
Example: Identifiers in Java:

le = [a-zA-Z\_\$]
di = [0-9]
Id = {le} ({le} | {di})*

Float = {di}*(\.{di}|{di}\.){di}* ((e|E)(\+|\-)?{di}+)?

Remarks:

- “le” and “di” are token classes.
- Defined Names are enclosed in “{”, “}”.
- Symbols are distinguished from Meta-symbols via “\”.
Chapter 2:
Basics: Finite Automata
Finite Automata

Example:
Finite Automata

Example:

Nodes: States;
Edges: Transitions;
Lables: Consumed input;
Finite Automata

Definition Finite Automata

A non-deterministic finite automaton (NFA) is a tuple $A = (Q, \Sigma, \delta, I, F)$ with:

- $Q$ a finite set of states;
- $\Sigma$ a finite alphabet of inputs;
- $I \subseteq Q$ the set of start states;
- $F \subseteq Q$ the set of final states and
- $\delta$ the set of transitions (-relation)

For an NFA, we reckon:

Definition Deterministic Finite Automata

Given $\delta: Q \times \Sigma \rightarrow Q$ a function and $|I| = 1$, then we call the NFA $A$ deterministic (DFA).

Michael Rabin Dana Scott
Finite Automata

**Definition Finite Automata**

A non-deterministic finite automaton (NFA) is a tuple $A = (Q, \Sigma, \delta, I, F)$ with:

- $Q$ a finite set of states;
- $\Sigma$ a finite alphabet of inputs;
- $I \subseteq Q$ the set of start states;
- $F \subseteq Q$ the set of final states and
- $\delta$ the set of transitions (-relation)

For an NFA, we reckon:

**Definition Deterministic Finite Automata**

Given $\delta : Q \times \Sigma \rightarrow Q$ a function and $|I| = 1$, then we call the NFA $A$ deterministic (DFA).
Finite Automata

- **Computations** are paths in the graph.
- **Accepting** computations lead from $I$ to $F$.
- An **accepted word** is the sequence of labels along an accepting computation...
Finite Automata

- **Computations** are paths in the graph.
- **Accepting** computations lead from $I$ to $F$.
- An **accepted word** is the sequence of labels along an accepting computation ...
Once again, more formally:

- We define the transitive closure $\delta^*$ of $\delta$ as the smallest set $\delta'$ with:
  
  
  $$(p, \epsilon, p) \in \delta' \quad \text{and} \quad (p, xw, q) \in \delta' \quad \text{if} \quad (p, x, p_1) \in \delta \quad \text{and} \quad (p_1, w, q) \in \delta'.$$

  $\delta^*$ characterizes for a path between the states $p$ and $q$ the words obtained by concatenating the labels along it.

- The set of all accepting words, i.e. $A$’s accepted language can be described compactly as:

  $$\mathcal{L}(A) = \{ w \in \Sigma^* \mid \exists i \in I, f \in F : (i, w, f) \in \delta^* \}$$
Chapter 3:
Converting Regular Expressions to NFAs
In Linear Time from Regular Expressions to NFAs

Thompson’s Algorithm

Produces $O(n)$ states for regular expressions of length $n$.

Ken Thompson
A formal approach to Thompson’s Algorithm

Berry-Sethi Algorithm

Produces exactly $n + 1$ states without $\epsilon$-transitions and demonstrates $\rightarrow$ Equality Systems and $\rightarrow$ Attribute Grammars

Idea:

An automaton covering the syntax tree of a regular expression $e$ tracks (conceptionally via markers “•”), which subexpressions $e'$ are reachable consuming the rest of input $w$.

- markers contribute an entry or exit point into the automaton for this subexpression
- edges for each layer of subexpression are modelled after Thompson’s automata
Glushkov Automaton

Produces exactly $n + 1$ states without $\epsilon$-transitions and demonstrates $\rightarrow$ Equality Systems and $\rightarrow$ Attribute Grammars

Idea:

An automaton covering the syntax tree of a regular expression $e$ tracks (conceptionally via markers “•”), which subexpressions $e'$ are reachable consuming the rest of input $w$.

- markers contribute an entry or exit point into the automaton for this subexpression
- edges for each layer of subexpression are modelled after Thompson’s automata
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[(a|b)^* a (a|b)\]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = bbbaa \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = bbbaa \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = bb\text{aa} \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = baa : \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = aa \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = aa : \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = a : \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = : \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

\[ w = : \]
Berry-Sethi Approach

In general:

- Input is only consumed at the leaves.
- Navigating the tree does not consume input $\rightarrow \epsilon$-transitions
- For a formal construction we need identifiers for states.
- For a node n’s identifier we take the subexpression, corresponding to the subtree dominated by n.
- There are possibly identical subexpressions in one regular expression.

$\Rightarrow$ we enumerate the leaves ...
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach (naive version)

Construction (naive version):

States: \( \bullet r, r\bullet \) with \( r \) nodes of \( e \);
Start state: \( \bullet e \);
Final state: \( e\bullet \);
Transitions: for leaves \( r \equiv [i, x] \) we require: \( (\bullet r, x, r\bullet) \).

The leftover transitions are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( r )</th>
<th>Transitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( r_1 \mid r_2 )</td>
<td>( (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet r_1) )  ( (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet r_2) )  ( (r_1\bullet, \epsilon, r\bullet) )  ( (r_2\bullet, \epsilon, r\bullet) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( r_1 \cdot r_2 )</td>
<td>( (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet r_1) )  ( (r_1\bullet, \epsilon, \bullet r_2) )  ( (r_2\bullet, \epsilon, r\bullet) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( r )</th>
<th>Transitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( r^* )</td>
<td>( (\bullet r, \epsilon, r\bullet) )  ( (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet r_1) )  ( (r_1\bullet, \epsilon, \bullet r_1) )  ( (r_1\bullet, \epsilon, r\bullet) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( r_1? )</td>
<td>( (\bullet r, \epsilon, r\bullet) )  ( (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet r_1) )  ( (r_1\bullet, \epsilon, r\bullet) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Berry-Sethi Approach

Discussion:
- Most transitions navigate through the expression
- The resulting automaton is in general \textit{nondeterministic}
Berry-Sethi Approach

Discussion:
- Most transitions navigate through the expression
- The resulting automaton is in general nondeterministic

⇒ Strategy for the sophisticated version:
  Avoid generating $\epsilon$-transitions
Berry-Sethi Approach

Discussion:
- Most transitions navigate through the expression
- The resulting automaton is in general **nondeterministic**

⇒ **Strategy for the sophisticated version:**
  Avoid generating $\epsilon$-transitions

Idea:
Pre-compute helper attributes during **D(epth)F(irst)S(earch)**!
Berry-Sethi Approach

Discussion:
- Most transitions navigate through the expression
- The resulting automaton is in general nondeterministic

$\Rightarrow$ Strategy for the sophisticated version:
Avoid generating $\epsilon$-transitions

Idea:
Pre-compute helper attributes during D(epth)F(irst)S(earch)!

Necessary node-attributes:
- \textbf{first} the set of read states below $r$, which \textit{may} be reached \textbf{first}, when descending into $r$.
- \textbf{next} the set of read states, which \textit{may} be reached \textbf{first} in the traversal \textbf{after} $r$.
- \textbf{last} the set of read states below $r$, which \textit{may} be reached \textbf{last} when descending into $r$.
- \textbf{empty} can the subexpression $r$ consume $\epsilon$?
Berry-Sethi Approach: 1st step

\[ \text{empty}[r] = t \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \epsilon \in [r] \]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 1st step

\[
\text{empty}[r] = t \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \epsilon \in [r]
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 1st step

\[ \text{empty}[r] = t \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \epsilon \in [r] \]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 1st step

\[ \text{empty} [r] = t \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \epsilon \in [r] \]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 1st step

\[ \text{empty}[r] = t \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \epsilon \in [r] \]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 1st step

Implementation:
DFS post-order traversal

for leaves $r \equiv i \, x$ we find $\text{empty}[r] = (x \equiv \epsilon)$.

Otherwise:

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{empty}[r_1 \mid r_2] &= \text{empty}[r_1] \lor \text{empty}[r_2] \\
\text{empty}[r_1 \cdot r_2] &= \text{empty}[r_1] \land \text{empty}[r_2] \\
\text{empty}[r_1^*] &= t \\
\text{empty}[r_1?] &= t
\end{align*}
$$
Berry-Sethi Approach: 2nd step

The **may-set of first reached read states**: The set of read states, that may be reached from $\bullet r$ (i.e. while descending into $r$) via sequences of $\epsilon$-transitions:

$$\text{first}[r] = \{ i \text{ in } r \mid (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet i) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}$$

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 2nd step

The may-set of first reached read states: The set of read states, that may be reached from $\bullet r$ (i.e. while descending into $r$) via sequences of $\epsilon$-transitions: $\text{first}[r] = \{i \in r \mid (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet i x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon\}$

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 2nd step

The may-set of first reached read states: The set of read states, that may be reached from $r$ (i.e. while descending into $r$) via sequences of $\epsilon$-transitions: $\text{first}[r] = \{ i \in r \mid (r, \epsilon, \bullet i x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}$

... for example:
The may-set of first reached read states: The set of read states, that may be reached from $\bullet r$ (i.e. while descending into $r$) via sequences of $\epsilon$-transitions:  
\[
\text{first}[r] = \{ i \text{ in } r \mid (\bullet r, \epsilon, \bullet i x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 2nd step

The may-set of first reached read states: The set of read states, that may be reached from •\( r \) (i.e. while descending into \( r \)) via sequences of \( \epsilon \)-transitions: 

\[
\text{first}[r] = \{ i \text{ in } r \mid (\bullet r, \epsilon, •i x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 2nd step

Implementation:
DFS post-order traversal

for leaves $r \equiv i \ x$ we find $\text{first}[r] = \{i \mid x \neq \epsilon\}$.

Otherwise:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{first}[r_1 \mid r_2] &= \text{first}[r_1] \cup \text{first}[r_2] \\
\text{first}[r_1 \cdot r_2] &= \begin{cases} 
\text{first}[r_1] \cup \text{first}[r_2] & \text{if empty}[r_1] = t \\
\text{first}[r_1] & \text{if empty}[r_1] = f 
\end{cases} \\
\text{first}[r_1^*] &= \text{first}[r_1] \\
\text{first}[r_1?] &= \text{first}[r_1]
\end{align*}
\]
Berry-Sethi Approach: 3rd step

The may-set of next read states: The set of read states reached after reading \( r \), that may be reached next via sequences of \( \epsilon \)-transitions.

\[
\text{next}[r] = \{ i \mid (r \cdot, \epsilon, \cdot i x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 3rd step

The may-set of next read states: The set of read states reached after reading $r$, that may be reached next via sequences of $\epsilon$-transitions.

\[
\text{next}[r] = \{ i \mid (r \bullet, \epsilon, \bullet i \ x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}\]

... for example:
The may-set of next read states: The set of read states reached after reading $r$, that may be reached next via sequences of $\epsilon$-transitions.

$$\text{next}[r] = \{ i \mid (r\bullet, \epsilon, \bullet i x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}$$

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 3rd step

The **may-set** of next read states: The set of read states reached after reading \( r \), that may be reached next via sequences of \( \epsilon \)-transitions.

\[
\text{next}[r] = \{ i \mid (r \cdot, \epsilon, \bullet i \; x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 3rd step

The **may-set of next read states**: The set of read states reached after reading \( r \), that may be reached next via sequences of \( \epsilon \)-transitions.

\[
\text{next}[r] = \{ i \mid (r, \epsilon, i, x) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 3rd step

Implementation:

**DFS pre-order traversal**

For the root, we find:  
\[ \text{next}[e] = \emptyset \]

Apart from that we distinguish, based on the context:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( r )</th>
<th>Equalities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( r_1</td>
<td>r_2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( r_1 \cdot r_2 )</td>
<td>( \text{next}[r_1] = \begin{cases} \text{first}[r_2] \cup \text{next}[r] &amp; \text{if empty}[r_2] = t \ \text{first}[r_2] &amp; \text{if empty}[r_2] = f \end{cases} ), ( \text{next}[r_2] = \text{next}[r] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( r_1^* )</td>
<td>( \text{next}[r_1] = \text{first}[r_1] \cup \text{next}[r] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( r_1? )</td>
<td>( \text{next}[r_1] = \text{next}[r] )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Berry-Sethi Approach: 4th step

The **may-set of last reached read states**: The set of read states, which may be reached last during the traversal of \( r \) connected to the root via \( \epsilon \)-transitions only:

\[
\text{last}[r] = \{ i \in r \mid (i, x, \epsilon, r, \bullet) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \}
\]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 4th step

The **may-set of last reached read states**: The set of read states, which may be reached last during the traversal of $r$ connected to the root via $\epsilon$-transitions only: \[ \text{last}[r] = \{ i \text{ in } r \mid (i \xrightarrow{\epsilon} r) \in \delta^*, x \neq \epsilon \} \]

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 4th step

The may-set of last reached read states: The set of read states, which may be reached last during the traversal of $r$ connected to the root via $\epsilon$-transitions only: $\text{last}[r] = \{ i \in r | (i, x \bullet, \epsilon, r \bullet) \in \delta^* , x \neq \epsilon \}$

... for example:
Berry-Sethi Approach: 4th step

Implementation:

**DFS post-order traversal**

For leaves $r \equiv i \ x$ we find $\text{last}[r] = \{ i \mid x \neq \epsilon \}$.

Otherwise:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{last}[r_1 \mid r_2] &= \text{last}[r_1] \cup \text{last}[r_2] \\
\text{last}[r_1 \cdot r_2] &= \begin{cases} 
\text{last}[r_1] \cup \text{last}[r_2] & \text{if empty}[r_2] = t \\
\text{last}[r_2] & \text{if empty}[r_2] = f 
\end{cases} \\
\text{last}[r_1^*] &= \text{last}[r_1] \\
\text{last}[r_1?] &= \text{last}[r_1]
\end{align*}
\]
Berry-Sethi Approach: (sophisticated version)

Construction (sophisticated version):
Create an automaton based on the syntax tree’s new attributes:

States: \{\bullet e\} \cup \{i\bullet \mid i\text{ a leaf not } \epsilon\}

Start state: \bullet e

Final states: \text{last} [e] \quad \text{if empty} [e] = f \\
\{\bullet e\} \cup \text{last} [e] \quad \text{otherwise}

Transitions: (\bullet e, a, i\bullet) \text{ if } i \in \text{first} [e] \text{ and } i \text{ labeled with } a. \\
(i\bullet, a, i'\bullet) \text{ if } i' \in \text{next} [i] \text{ and } i' \text{ labeled with } a.

We call the resulting automaton \( A_e \).
Berry-Sethi Approach

... for example:

![Diagram](attachment://diagram.png)

Remarks:

- This construction is known as Berry-Sethi- or Glushkov-construction.
- It is used for XML to define Content Models
- The result may not be what we had in mind...
Chapter 4:
Turning NFAs deterministic
The expected outcome:

Remarks:

- ideal automaton would be even more compact
  (→ Antimirov automata, Follow Automata)
- but Berry-Sethi is rather directly constructed
- Anyway, we need a deterministic version

⇒ Powerset-Construction
Powerset Construction

... for example:
Powerset Construction

... for example:
Powerset Construction

... for example:
Powerset Construction

... for example:

![Diagram of powerset construction](image)
Powerset Construction

... for example:
Theorem:

For every non-deterministic automaton $A = (Q, \Sigma, \delta, I, F)$ we can compute a deterministic automaton $\mathcal{P}(A)$ with

$$\mathcal{L}(A) = \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{P}(A))$$
Powerset Construction

Theorem:

For every non-deterministic automaton $A = (Q, \Sigma, \delta, I, F)$ we can compute a deterministic automaton $\mathcal{P}(A)$ with

$$L(A) = L(\mathcal{P}(A))$$

Construction:

States: Powersets of $Q$;

Start state: $I$;

Final states: $\{Q' \subseteq Q \mid Q' \cap F \neq \emptyset\}$;

Transitions: $\delta \mathcal{P}(Q', a) = \{q \in Q \mid \exists p \in Q' : (p, a, q) \in \delta\}$. 
Powerset Construction

**Observation:**

There are exponentially many powersets of $Q$

- **Idea:** Consider only *contributing* powersets. Starting with the set $Q_P = \{I\}$ we only add further states by need ...
- i.e., whenever we can reach them from a state in $Q_P$
- However, the resulting automaton can become enormously huge ...
  which is (sort of) not happening in practice
Observation:
There are exponentially many powersets of $Q$

- Idea: Consider only contributing powersets. Starting with the set $Q_P = \{I\}$ we only add further states by need ...
- i.e., whenever we can reach them from a state in $Q_P$
- However, the resulting automaton can become enormously huge ...
  which is (sort of) not happening in practice

- Therefore, in tools like grep a regular expression’s DFA is never created!
- Instead, only the sets, directly necessary for interpreting the input are generated while processing the input
Powerset Construction

... for example:

```
[ba b a b]
```

```
\begin{align*}
0 &\rightarrow a & 2 &\rightarrow a \\
0 &\rightarrow b & 4 &\rightarrow a \\
2 &\rightarrow a & 4 &\rightarrow a \\
1 &\rightarrow b & 3 &\rightarrow a
\end{align*}
```
Powerset Construction

... for example:

a b a b
Powerset Construction

... for example:

```
a b a b
```
Powerset Construction

... for example:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
a & b & a & b \\
\end{array}
\]
Powerset Construction

... for example:

```
  a  b  a  b
```
 Remarks:

- For an input sequence of length $n$, maximally $O(n)$ sets are generated.
- Once a set/edge of the DFA is generated, they are stored within a hash-table.
- Before generating a new transition, we check this table for already existing edges with the desired label.
Remarks:

- For an input sequence of length \( n \), maximally \( \mathcal{O}(n) \) sets are generated.
- Once a set/edge of the DFA is generated, they are stored within a hash-table.
- Before generating a new transition, we check this table for already existing edges with the desired label.

Summary:

Theorem:

For each regular expression \( e \), we can compute a deterministic automaton \( A = \mathcal{P}(A_e) \) with

\[
\mathcal{L}(A) = [e]
\]
Chapter 5:
Scanner design
Scanner design

Input (simplified): a set of rules:

\[ e_1 \{ \text{action}_1 \} \]
\[ e_2 \{ \text{action}_2 \} \]
\[ \ldots \]
\[ e_k \{ \text{action}_k \} \]

Output: a program, reading a maximal prefix \( w \) from the input, that satisfies \( e_1 \mid \ldots \mid e_k \); determining the minimal \( i \), such that \( w \in \left[ e_i \right] \); executing \( \text{action}_i \) for \( w \).
Scanner design

Input (simplified): a set of rules:

\[
\begin{align*}
e_1 & \quad \{ \text{action}_1 \} \\
e_2 & \quad \{ \text{action}_2 \} \\
\quad & \ldots \\
e_k & \quad \{ \text{action}_k \}
\end{align*}
\]

Output: a program,

... reading a maximal prefix \( w \) from the input, that satisfies \( e_1 \mid \ldots \mid e_k \);

... determining the minimal \( i \), such that \( w \in [e_i] \);

... executing \( \text{action}_i \) for \( w \).
Implementation:

Idea:

- Create the DFA \( P(A_e) = (Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, F) \) for the expression \( e = (e_1 | \ldots | e_k) \);
- Define the sets:

  \[
  \begin{align*}
  F_1 &= \{ q \in F \mid q \cap \text{last}[e_1] \neq \emptyset \} \\
  F_2 &= \{ q \in (F \setminus F_1) \mid q \cap \text{last}[e_2] \neq \emptyset \} \\
  &\vdots \\
  F_k &= \{ q \in (F \setminus (F_1 \cup \ldots \cup F_{k-1})) \mid q \cap \text{last}[e_k] \neq \emptyset \}
  \end{align*}
  \]
- For input \( w \) we find: \( \tilde{\delta}^*(q_0, w) \in F_i \) iff the scanner must execute action \( i \) for \( w \)
Implementation:

Idea (cont’d):

- The scanner manages two pointers \( \langle A, B \rangle \) and the related states \( \langle q_A, q_B \rangle \)...
- Pointer \( A \) points to the last position in the input, after which a state \( q_A \in F \) was reached;
- Pointer \( B \) tracks the current position.

```rust
stdout.writeln("Hallo");
```

```
A   B
ające

A
```
Implementation:

Idea (cont’d):

- The scanner manages two pointers $\langle A, B \rangle$ and the related states $\langle q_A, q_B \rangle$...
- Pointer $A$ points to the last position in the input, after which a state $q_A \in F$ was reached;
- Pointer $B$ tracks the current position.

```
writeln ("Hallo")
```
Implementation:

Idea (cont’d):

The current state being $q_B = \emptyset$, we consume input up to position $A$ and reset:

$$
B := A; \quad A := \bot; \\
q_B := q_0; \quad q_A := \bot
$$

```plaintext
writeln ("Hallo");
```
Implementation:

Idea (cont’d):

- The current state being \( q_B = \emptyset \), we consume input up to position \( A \) and reset:

\[
\begin{align*}
B & := A; \quad A := \bot; \\
q_B & := q_0; \quad q_A := \bot
\end{align*}
\]

```
writeln ("Hallo") ;
```

```
A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>q_4</th>
<th>\emptyset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
```
Implementation:

Idea (cont’d):

- The current state being $q_B = \emptyset$, we consume input up to position $A$ and reset:

  $$
  B := A; \quad A := \bot;
  q_B := q_0; \quad q_A := \bot
  $$

```
write ln
```

```
( "Hello" );
```
Now and then, it is handy to differentiate between particular scanner states.

In different states, we want to recognize different token classes with different precedences.

Depending on the consumed input, the scanner state can be changed.

**Example:** Comments

Within a comment, identifiers, constants, comments, ... are ignored.
Input (generalized): a set of rules:

\[
\begin{align*}
\langle \text{state} \rangle & \quad \{ \text{e}_1 \quad \{ \text{action}_1 \quad \text{yybegin(state}_1); \} \\
\text{e}_2 & \quad \{ \text{action}_2 \quad \text{yybegin(state}_2); \} \\
& \quad \ldots \\
\text{e}_k & \quad \{ \text{action}_k \quad \text{yybegin(state}_k); \} \\
\} \\
\end{align*}
\]

- The statement \text{yybegin(state}_i); \ resets the current state to \text{state}_i.
- The start state is called (e.g.\text{flex JFlex}) \text{YYINITIAL}.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\langle \text{YYINITIAL} \rangle & \quad \text{"/\*"} \quad \{ \text{yybegin(COMMENT); } \} \\
\langle \text{COMMENT} \rangle & \quad \{ \text{"*/\"} \quad \{ \text{yybegin(YYINITIAL); } \} \\
& \quad \ldots \text{\textbackslash n} \quad \{ \} \\
\} \\
\end{align*}
\]
Remarks:

- “.” matches all characters different from “\n”.
- For every state we generate the scanner respectively.
- Method `yybegin (STATE);` switches between different scanners.
- Comments might be directly implemented as (admittedly overly complex) token-class.
- Scanner-states are especially handy for implementing preprocessors, expanding special fragments in regular programs.
Topic:

Syntactic Analysis
Syntactic Analysis

- Syntactic analysis tries to integrate Tokens into larger program units.

Diagram:

```
Token-Stream → Parser → Syntaxtree
```
Syntactic Analysis

- Syntactic analysis tries to integrate Tokens into larger program units.
- Such units may possibly be:
  - Expressions;
  - Statements;
  - Conditional branches;
  - loops; ...
Discussion:

In general, parsers are not developed by hand, but generated from a specification:

Specification → **Generator** → Parser
Discussion:

In general, parsers are not developed by hand, but generated from a specification:

$$E \rightarrow E \{\text{op}\} E$$

Specification of the hierarchical structure: contextfree grammars

Generated implementation: Pushdown automata + X
Chapter 1: Basics of Contextfree Grammars
Basics:  Context-free Grammars

- Programs of programming languages can have arbitrary numbers of tokens, but only finitely many Token-classes.
- This is why we choose the set of Token-classes to be the finite alphabet of terminals $T$.
- The nested structure of program components can be described elegantly via context-free grammars...
Basics: Context-free Grammars

- Programs of programming languages can have arbitrary numbers of tokens, but only finitely many Token-classes.
- This is why we choose the set of Token-classes to be the finite alphabet of terminals $T$.
- The nested structure of program components can be described elegantly via context-free grammars...

**Definition: Context-Free Grammar**

A context-free grammar (CFG) is a 4-tuple $G = (N, T, P, S)$ with:

- $N$ the set of nonterminals,
- $T$ the set of terminals,
- $P$ the set of productions or rules, and
- $S \in N$ the start symbol
Conventions

The rules of context-free grammars take the following form:

\[ A \rightarrow \alpha \quad \text{with} \quad A \in N, \quad \alpha \in (N \cup T)^* \]
Conventions

The rules of context-free grammars take the following form:

\[ A \rightarrow \alpha \quad \text{with} \quad A \in N, \ \alpha \in (N \cup T)^* \]

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow a \ S \ b \\
S & \rightarrow \epsilon
\end{align*}
\]

Specified language: \[ \{ a^n b^n \mid n \geq 0 \} \]
Conventions

The rules of context-free grammars take the following form:

\[ A \rightarrow \alpha \quad \text{with} \quad A \in N , \; \alpha \in (N \cup T)^* \]

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow a \; S \; b \\
S & \rightarrow \epsilon
\end{align*}
\]

Specified language: \( \{ a^n b^n \mid n \geq 0 \} \)

Conventions:

In examples, we specify nonterminals and terminals in general implicitly:

- nonterminals are: \( A, B, C, \ldots, \langle \text{exp} \rangle, \langle \text{stmt} \rangle, \ldots \);
- terminals are: \( a, b, c, \ldots, \text{int}, \text{name}, \ldots \);
... a practical example:

\[
S \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle \text{stmt} \rangle \\
\langle \text{stmt} \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle \text{if} \rangle \mid \langle \text{while} \rangle \mid \langle \text{rexp} \rangle ;
\]

\[
\langle \text{if} \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{if} \ (\langle \text{rexp} \rangle) \ \langle \text{stmt} \rangle \ \text{else} \ \langle \text{stmt} \rangle
\]

\[
\langle \text{while} \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{while} \ (\langle \text{rexp} \rangle) \ \langle \text{stmt} \rangle
\]

\[
\langle \text{rexp} \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{int} \mid \langle \text{lexp} \rangle \mid \langle \text{lexp} \rangle = \langle \text{rexp} \rangle \mid \ldots
\]

\[
\langle \text{lexp} \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \text{name} \mid \ldots
\]
... a practical example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow \langle \text{stmt} \rangle \\
\langle \text{stmt} \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \text{if} \rangle | \langle \text{while} \rangle | \langle \text{rexp} \rangle ; \\
\langle \text{if} \rangle & \rightarrow \text{if} ( \langle \text{rexp} \rangle ) \langle \text{stmt} \rangle \text{ else } \langle \text{stmt} \rangle \\
\langle \text{while} \rangle & \rightarrow \text{while} ( \langle \text{rexp} \rangle ) \langle \text{stmt} \rangle \\
\langle \text{rexp} \rangle & \rightarrow \text{int} | \langle \text{lexp} \rangle | \langle \text{lexp} \rangle = \langle \text{rexp} \rangle | \ldots \\
\langle \text{lexp} \rangle & \rightarrow \text{name} | \ldots
\end{align*}
\]

More conventions:

- For every nonterminal, we collect the right hand sides of rules and list them together.
- The \( j \)-th rule for \( A \) can be identified via the pair \((A, j)\) (with \( j \geq 0 \)).
Pair of grammars:

Both grammars describe the same language
Pair of grammars:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>E</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>E+E⁰</th>
<th>E*E¹</th>
<th>(E)²</th>
<th>name³</th>
<th>int⁴</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>E+T⁰</td>
<td>T¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>T*F⁰</td>
<td>F¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>(E)⁰</td>
<td>name¹</td>
<td>int²</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both grammars describe the same language
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example: $E$
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:  \[ E \rightarrow E + T \]
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps \( \alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m \) is called derivation.

... for example:  
\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
& \rightarrow T + T 
\end{align*}
\]
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps \( \alpha_0 \to \ldots \to \alpha_m \) is called derivation.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \to E + T \\
& \to T + T \\
& \to T \ast F + T
\end{align*}
\]
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
& \rightarrow T + T \\
& \rightarrow T * F + T \\
& \rightarrow T * \text{int} + T 
\end{align*}
\]
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \to \ldots \to \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:

$E \to E + T$

$\to T + T$

$\to T \ast F + T$

$\to T \ast \text{int} + T$

$\to F \ast \text{int} + T$
Grammars are **term rewriting systems**. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
& \rightarrow T + T \\
& \rightarrow T \ast F + T \\
& \rightarrow T \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow F \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + T
\end{align*}
\]
Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:  

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
E & \rightarrow T + T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F + T \\
T & \rightarrow T * \text{int} + T \\
T & \rightarrow F * \text{int} + T \\
F & \rightarrow \text{name} * \text{int} + T \\
F & \rightarrow \text{name} * \text{int} + F
\end{align*}
\]
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
  & \rightarrow T + T \\
  & \rightarrow T \ast F + T \\
  & \rightarrow T \ast \text{int} + T \\
  & \rightarrow F \ast \text{int} + T \\
  & \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + T \\
  & \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + F \\
  & \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
& \rightarrow T + T \\
& \rightarrow T \ast F + T \\
& \rightarrow T \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow F \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + F \\
& \rightarrow \text{name} \ast \text{int} + \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]

Definition

The rewriting relation $\rightarrow$ is a relation on words over $N \cup T$, with

$\alpha \rightarrow \alpha'$ iff $\alpha = \alpha_1 A \alpha_2 \land \alpha' = \alpha_1 \beta \alpha_2$ for an $A \rightarrow \beta \in P$
Derivation

Grammars are term rewriting systems. The rules offer feasible rewriting steps. A sequence of such rewriting steps $\alpha_0 \rightarrow \ldots \rightarrow \alpha_m$ is called derivation.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
 & \rightarrow T + T \\
 & \rightarrow T * F + T \\
 & \rightarrow T * \text{int} + T \\
 & \rightarrow F * \text{int} + T \\
 & \rightarrow \text{name} * \text{int} + T \\
 & \rightarrow \text{name} * \text{int} + F \\
 & \rightarrow \text{name} * \text{int} + \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]

Definition

The rewriting relation $\rightarrow$ is a relation on words over $N \cup T$, with

\[\alpha \rightarrow \alpha' \text{  iff  } \alpha = \alpha_1 A \alpha_2 \land \alpha' = \alpha_1 \beta \alpha_2 \text{  for an  } A \rightarrow \beta \in P\]

The reflexive and transitive closure of $\rightarrow$ is denoted as: $\rightarrow^*$
Remarks:

- The relation $\rightarrow$ depends on the grammar.
- In each step of a derivation, we may choose:
  - a spot, determining where we will rewrite.
  - a rule, determining how we will rewrite.
- The language, specified by $G$ is:
  \[ \mathcal{L}(G) = \{ w \in T^* \mid S \rightarrow^* w \} \]
Remarks:

- The relation $\rightarrow$ depends on the grammar.
- In each step of a derivation, we may choose:
  - a spot, determining where we will rewrite.
  - a rule, determining how we will rewrite.
- The language, specified by $G$ is:

$$L(G) = \{ w \in T^* \mid S \rightarrow^* w \}$$

Attention:
The order, in which disjunct fragments are rewritten is not relevant.
Derivation Tree

Derivations of a symbol are represented as derivation trees:

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow^0 E + T \\
& \rightarrow^1 T + T \\
& \rightarrow^0 T \ast F + T \\
& \rightarrow^2 T \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow^1 F \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow^1 \text{name} \ast \text{int} + T \\
& \rightarrow^1 \text{name} \ast \text{int} + F \\
& \rightarrow^2 \text{name} \ast \text{int} + \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]

A derivation tree for \( A \in N \):

- **inner nodes:** rule applications
- **root:** rule application for \( A \)
- **leaves:** terminals or \( \epsilon \)

The successors of \((B, i)\) correspond to right hand sides of the rule
Special Derivations

Attention:
In contrast to arbitrary derivations, we find special ones, always rewriting the leftmost (or rather rightmost) occurrence of a nonterminal.

- These are called leftmost (or rather rightmost) derivations and are denoted with the index $L$ (or $R$ respectively).
- Leftmost (or rightmost) derivations correspond to a left-to-right (or right-to-left) preorder-DFS-traversal of the derivation tree.
- Reverse rightmost derivations correspond to a left-to-right postorder-DFS-traversal of the derivation tree.
Special Derivations

... for example:

```
( E, 0 )
( E, 1 )
( T, 0 )
( T, 1 )
( F, 1 )
( F, 2 )
( T, 1 )
( F, 2 )
```
Special Derivations

... for example:

Leftmost derivation: $\left(E,0\right) \left(E,1\right) \left(T,0\right) \left(T,1\right) \left(F,1\right) \left(F,2\right) \left(T,1\right) \left(F,2\right)$
Special Derivations

... for example:

![Derivation tree]

Leftmost derivation:

Rightmost derivation:
Special Derivations

... for example:

Leftmost derivation: $(E, 0) (E, 1) (T, 0) (T, 1) (F, 1) (F, 2) (T, 1) (F, 2)$
Rightmost derivation: $(E, 0) (T, 1) (F, 2) (E, 1) (T, 0) (F, 2) (T, 1) (F, 1)$
Reverse rightmost derivation: $(F, 1) (T, 1) (F, 2) (T, 0) (E, 1) (F, 2) (T, 1) (E, 0)$
Unique Grammars

The concatenation of leaves of a derivation tree $t$ are often called $\text{yield}(t)$.

... for example:

```
E 0
+E 1
T 0
+ T 1
F 1
F 2
F 2
T 1
name
int
int
```

gives rise to the concatenation: $\text{name} \ast \text{int} + \text{int}$.
Unique Grammars

**Definition:**

Grammar \( G \) is called **unique**, if for every \( w \in T^* \) there is maximally one derivation tree \( t \) of \( S \) with \( \text{yield}(t) = w \).

... in our example:

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( E )</th>
<th>( E + E )</th>
<th>( E * E )</th>
<th>( ( E ) )</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( E )</th>
<th>( E + T )</th>
<th>( T )</th>
<th>( T * F )</th>
<th>( ( E ) )</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( F )</th>
<th>( ( E ) )</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>int</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first one is ambiguous, the second one is unique.
Conclusion:

- A derivation tree represents a possible hierarchical structure of a word.
- For programming languages, only those grammars with a unique structure are of interest.
- Derivation trees are one-to-one corresponding with leftmost derivations as well as (reverse) rightmost derivations.
Conclusion:

- A derivation tree represents a possible hierarchical structure of a word.
- For programming languages, only those grammars with a unique structure are of interest.
- Derivation trees are one-to-one corresponding with leftmost derivations as well as (reverse) rightmost derivations.

- **Leftmost derivations** correspond to a top-down reconstruction of the syntax tree.
- **Reverse rightmost derivations** correspond to a bottom-up reconstruction of the syntax tree.
Chapter 2: Basics of Pushdown Automata
Basics of Pushdown Automata

Languages, specified by context free grammars are accepted by Pushdown Automata:

The pushdown is used e.g. to verify correct nesting of braces.
Example:

States: 0, 1, 2
Start state: 0
Final states: 0, 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>States:</th>
<th>0, 1, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start state:</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final states:</td>
<td>0, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conventions:

- We do **not** differentiate between pushdown symbols and states
- The rightmost / upper pushdown symbol represents the state
- Every transition consumes / modifies the upper part of the pushdown
Definition: Pushdown Automaton

A pushdown automaton (PDA) is a tuple \( M = (Q, T, \delta, q_0, F) \) with:

- \( Q \) a finite set of states;
- \( T \) an input alphabet;
- \( q_0 \in Q \) the start state;
- \( F \subseteq Q \) the set of final states and
- \( \delta \subseteq Q^+ \times (T \cup \{\epsilon\}) \times Q^* \) a finite set of transitions
Definition: Pushdown Automaton

A pushdown automaton (PDA) is a tuple \( M = (Q, T, \delta, q_0, F) \) with:

- \( Q \) a finite set of states;
- \( T \) an input alphabet;
- \( q_0 \in Q \) the start state;
- \( F \subseteq Q \) the set of final states and
- \( \delta \subseteq Q^+ \times (T \cup \{\epsilon\}) \times Q^* \) a finite set of transitions

We define computations of pushdown automata with the help of transitions; a particular computation state (the current configuration) is a pair:

\[
(\gamma, w) \in Q^* \times T^*
\]

consisting of the pushdown content and the remaining input.
... for example:

States: 0, 1, 2
Start state: 0
Final states: 0, 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
... for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>States:</th>
<th>0, 1, 2</th>
<th>Start state:</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Final states:</td>
<td>0, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$$
(0, \quad a \ a \ a \ b \ b \ b)
$$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
... for example:

**States:** 0, 1, 2  
**Start state:** 0  
**Final states:** 0, 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
(0, \ a\ a\ a\ b\ b\ b) \vdash (1\ 1, \ a\ a\ b\ b\ b)
\]
... for example:

**States:** 0, 1, 2  
**Start state:** 0  
**Final states:** 0, 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[(0, aabbb) \vdash (11, aabbb) \vdash (111, abbbb)\]
... for example:

States: 0, 1, 2
Start state: 0
Final states: 0, 2

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & a & 11 \\
1 & a & 11 \\
11 & b & 2 \\
12 & b & 2 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
(0, \ a\ a\ a\ b\ b\ b) \vdash (11, \ a\ a\ b\ b\ b) \\
\vdash (111, \ a\ b\ b\ b) \\
\vdash (1111, \ b\ b\ b)
\]
... for example:

States: 0, 1, 2
Start state: 0
Final states: 0, 2

\[
\begin{array}{c|ccc}
    & a & 11 \\
0 & a & 11 \\
1 & a & 11 \\
11 & b & 2 \\
12 & b & 2 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[(0, a a a b b b) \vdash (11, a a b b b)\]
\[(11, a b b b) \vdash (1111, b b b)\]
\[(1111, b b b) \vdash (112, b b)\]
... for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>States:</th>
<th>0, 1, 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start state:</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Final states:</td>
<td>0, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(0, a a a b b b) ⊢ (11, a a b b b)

(11, a a b b b) ⊢ (111, a b b b)

(111, a b b b) ⊢ (1111, b b b)

(1111, b b b) ⊢ (112, b b)

(112, b b) ⊢ (12, b)
States: 0, 1, 2
Start state: 0
Final states: 0, 2

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{States} & a & b \\
\hline
0 & 11 & 11 \\
1 & 11 & 11 \\
11 & 2 & 2 \\
12 & 2 & 2 \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

\[
(0, \ a a a b b b) \vdash (11, \ a a b b b) \\
\vdash (111, \ a b b b) \\
\vdash (1111, \ b b b) \\
\vdash (112, \ b b) \\
\vdash (12, \ b) \\
\vdash (2, \ \epsilon)
\]
A computation step is characterized by the relation \( \vdash \subseteq (Q^* \times T^*)^2 \) with

\[
(\alpha \gamma, xw) \vdash (\alpha \gamma', w) \quad \text{for} \quad (\gamma, x, \gamma') \in \delta
\]
A computation step is characterized by the relation $\vdash \subseteq (Q^* \times T^*)^2$ with

$$(\alpha \gamma, x w) \vdash (\alpha \gamma', w) \quad \text{for} \quad (\gamma, x, \gamma') \in \delta$$

Remarks:

- The relation $\vdash$ depends on the pushdown automaton $M$
- The reflexive and transitive closure of $\vdash$ is denoted by $\vdash^*$
- Then, the language accepted by $M$ is

$$L(M) = \{ w \in T^* \mid \exists f \in F : (q_0, w) \vdash^* (f, \epsilon) \}$$
A computation step is characterized by the relation \( \vdash \subseteq (Q^* \times T^*)^2 \) with

\[
(\alpha \gamma, x w) \vdash (\alpha \gamma', w) \quad \text{for} \quad (\gamma, x, \gamma') \in \delta
\]

Remarks:

- The relation \( \vdash \) depends on the pushdown automaton \( M \)
- The reflexive and transitive closure of \( \vdash \) is denoted by \( \vdash^* \)
- Then, the language accepted by \( M \) is

\[
L(M) = \{ w \in T^* \mid \exists f \in F : (q_0, w) \vdash^* (f, \epsilon) \}
\]

We accept with a final state together with empty input.
**Definition: Deterministic Pushdown Automaton**

The pushdown automaton $M$ is **deterministic**, if every configuration has maximally one successor configuration.

This is exactly the case if for distinct transitions $(\gamma_1, x, \gamma_2), (\gamma'_1, x', \gamma'_2) \in \delta$ we can assume:

Is $\gamma_1$ a suffix of $\gamma'_1$, then $x \neq x' \land x \neq \epsilon \neq x'$ is valid.
Definition: Deterministic Pushdown Automaton

The pushdown automaton $M$ is deterministic, if every configuration has maximally one successor configuration.

This is exactly the case if for distinct transitions $(\gamma_1, x, \gamma_2), (\gamma'_1, x', \gamma'_2) \in \delta$ we can assume:

Is $\gamma_1$ a suffix of $\gamma'_1$, then $x \neq x' \land x \neq \epsilon \neq x'$ is valid.

... for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>a</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

... this obviously holds
Theorem:
For each context free grammar $G = (N, T, P, S)$ a pushdown automaton $M$ with $\mathcal{L}(G) = \mathcal{L}(M)$ can be built.

The theorem is so important for us, that we take a look at two constructions for automata, motivated by both of the special derivations:

- $M^L_G$ to build Leftmost derivations
- $M^R_G$ to build reverse Rightmost derivations
Chapter 3: Top-down Parsing
Item Pushdown Automaton

Construction: 

- Reconstruct a Leftmost derivation.
- Expand nonterminals using a rule.
- Verify successively, that the chosen rule matches the input.

The states are now Items (= rules with a bullet):

\[ [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet \beta] \, , \, A \rightarrow \alpha \beta \in P \]

The bullet marks the spot, how far the rule is already processed.
Our example:

\[
S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b
\]
Item Pushdown Automaton – Example

Our example:

\[ S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b \]
Our example:

\[
S \rightarrow AB \\
A \rightarrow a \\
B \rightarrow b
\]
Item Pushdown Automaton – Example

Our example:
Item Pushdown Automaton – Example

Our example:

\[ S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b \]
Item Pushdown Automaton – Example

Our example:

\[ S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b \]
Our example:

\[ S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b \]
Our example:

\[ S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b \]
Item Pushdown Automaton – Example

Our example:

\[
S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b
\]
Our example:

\[ S \rightarrow AB \quad A \rightarrow a \quad B \rightarrow b \]
Our example:

\[
S \rightarrow AB \\
A \rightarrow a \\
B \rightarrow b
\]
We add another rule \[ S' \rightarrow S \$ \] for initialising the construction:

**Start state:** \[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S \$ \]

**End state:** \[ S' \rightarrow S \bullet \$ \]

**Transition relations:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transition</th>
<th>Start state</th>
<th>End state</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S $ ]</td>
<td>$ $</td>
<td>$ $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ S \rightarrow \bullet A B ]</td>
<td>$ $</td>
<td>$ $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ A \rightarrow \bullet a ]</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ S \rightarrow \bullet A B ] [A → a •]</td>
<td>$ $</td>
<td>$ $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ S \rightarrow A \bullet B ]</td>
<td>$ $</td>
<td>$ $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ B \rightarrow \bullet b ]</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ S \rightarrow A \bullet B ] [B → b •]</td>
<td>$ $</td>
<td>$ $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S $ ] [S → A B •]</td>
<td>$ $</td>
<td>$ $</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S \$ \]

\[ S \rightarrow \bullet A B \]

\[ A \rightarrow \bullet a \]

\[ S \rightarrow \bullet A B \] [A → a •]

\[ S \rightarrow A \bullet B \]

\[ B \rightarrow \bullet b \]

\[ S \rightarrow A \bullet B \] [B → b •]

\[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S \$ \] [S → A B •]

\[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S \$ \]

\[ S \rightarrow A B \bullet \]

\[ S' \rightarrow \bullet S \$ \] [S → A B •]
Item Pushdown Automaton

The item pushdown automaton $M^L_G$ has three kinds of transitions:

**Expansions:**
\[[A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta], \epsilon, [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta] [B \rightarrow \bullet \gamma]\] for $A \rightarrow \alpha B \beta, B \rightarrow \gamma \in P$

**Shifts:**
\[[A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet a \beta], a, [A \rightarrow \alpha a \bullet \beta]\] for $A \rightarrow \alpha a \beta \in P$

**Reduces:**
\[[A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta] [B \rightarrow \gamma \bullet], \epsilon, [A \rightarrow \alpha B \bullet \beta]\] for $A \rightarrow \alpha B \beta, B \rightarrow \gamma \in P$

Items of the form: $[A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet]$ are also called complete

The item pushdown automaton shifts the bullet around the derivation tree ...
Item Pushdown Automaton

Discussion:

- The expansions of a computation form a leftmost derivation
- Unfortunately, the expansions are chosen nondeterministically

- For proving correctness of the construction, we show that for every Item \([A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta]\) the following holds:

  \( ([A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta], w) \vdash^* ([A \rightarrow \alpha B \bullet \beta], \epsilon) \) iff \( B \rightarrow^* w \)

- LL-Parsing is based on the item pushdown automaton and tries to make the expansions deterministic ...
Item Pushdown Automaton

Example: \[ S' \to S \\$ \quad S \to \epsilon \mid a \ S \ b \]

The transitions of the according Item Pushdown Automaton:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Transition 1</th>
<th>Transition 2</th>
<th>Transition 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S \$ ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S \$ ] [ S \to \bullet ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S \$ ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S \$ ] [ S \to \bullet a S b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>[ S \to \bullet a S b ]</td>
<td>( a )</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ] [ S \to \bullet ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ] [ S \to \bullet a S b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ] [ S \to \bullet ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S \to a S \bullet b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet S b ] [ S \to a S b \bullet ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S \to a S \bullet b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>[ S \to a S \bullet b ]</td>
<td>( b )</td>
<td>[ S \to a S b \bullet ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S \$ ] [ S \to \bullet ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S' \to S \bullet $ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S \$ ] [ S \to a S b \bullet ]</td>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
<td>[ S' \to S \bullet $ ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item Pushdown Automaton

**Example:** \( S' \rightarrow S \, \$ \quad S \rightarrow \epsilon \mid a \, S \, b \)

The transitions of the according Item Pushdown Automaton:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>([S' \rightarrow \bullet , S , $] \quad \epsilon \quad [S' \rightarrow \bullet , S , $] \quad [S \rightarrow \bullet] )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet , S , $] \quad \epsilon \quad [S' \rightarrow \bullet , S , $] \quad [S \rightarrow \bullet , a , S , b] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow \bullet , a , S , b] \quad a \quad [S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] \quad \epsilon \quad [S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] \quad [S \rightarrow \bullet] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] \quad \epsilon \quad [S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] \quad [S \rightarrow \bullet , a , S , b] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] \quad [S \rightarrow \bullet] \quad \epsilon \quad [S \rightarrow a , S , b] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a , \bullet , S , b] \quad [S \rightarrow a , S , b , \bullet] \quad \epsilon \quad [S \rightarrow a , S , b] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a , S , b , \bullet] \quad b \quad [S \rightarrow a , S , b , \bullet] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet , S , $] \quad [S \rightarrow \bullet] \quad \epsilon \quad [S' \rightarrow S , \bullet , $] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet , S , $] \quad [S \rightarrow a , S , b , \bullet] \quad \epsilon \quad [S' \rightarrow S , \bullet , $] )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conflicts arise between the transitions \((0, 1)\) and \((3, 4)\), resp.
Topdown Parsing

Problem:
Conflicts between the transitions prohibit an implementation of the item pushdown automaton as deterministic pushdown automaton.

Idea 1: GLL Parsing
For each conflict, we create a virtual copy of the complete stack and continue deriving in parallel.

Idea 2: Recursive Descent & Backtracking
Depth-first search for an appropriate derivation.

Idea 3: Recursive Descent & Lookahead
Conflicts are resolved by considering a lookup of the next input symbol.
Problem:
Conflicts between the transitions prohibit an implementation of the item pushdown automaton as deterministic pushdown automaton.

Idea 1: GLL Parsing
For each conflict, we create a virtual copy of the complete stack and continue deriving in parallel.
Topdown Parsing

**Problem:**
Conflicts between the transitions prohibit an implementation of the item pushdown automaton as deterministic pushdown automaton.

**Idea 1: GLL Parsing**
For each conflict, we create a virtual copy of the complete stack and continue deriving in parallel.

**Idea 2: Recursive Descent & Backtracking**
Depth-first search for an appropriate derivation.
Topdown Parsing

**Problem:**
Conflicts between the transitions prohibit an implementation of the item pushdown automaton as deterministic pushdown automaton.

**Idea 1: GLL Parsing**
For each conflict, we create a virtual copy of the complete stack and continue deriving in parallel.

**Idea 2: Recursive Descent & Backtracking**
Depth-first search for an appropriate derivation.

**Idea 3: Recursive Descent & Lookahead**
Conflicts are resolved by considering a lookup of the next input symbol.
Structure of the *LL(1)*-Parser:

- The parser accesses a frame of length 1 of the input;
- it corresponds to an item pushdown automaton, essentially;
- table $M[q, w]$ contains the rule of choice.
Topdown Parsing

Idea:
- Emanate from the item pushdown automaton
- Consider the next input symbol to determine the appropriate rule for the next expansion
- A grammar is called $LL(1)$ if a unique choice is always possible
Topdown Parsing

Idea:
- Emanate from the item pushdown automaton
- Consider the next input symbol to determine the appropriate rule for the next expansion
- A grammar is called $LL(1)$ if a unique choice is always possible

Definition:
A reduced grammar is called $LL(1)$, if for each two distinct rules $A \rightarrow \alpha$, $A \rightarrow \alpha' \in \mathcal{P}$ and each derivation $S \rightarrow^* L u A \beta$ with $u \in T^*$ the following is valid:

$$\text{First}_1(\alpha \beta) \cap \text{First}_1(\alpha' \beta) = \emptyset$$
Topdown Parsing

Example 1:

\[
S \rightarrow \text{if } (E) S \text{ else } S \mid \\
\text{while } (E) S \mid \\
E ; \\
E \rightarrow \text{id}
\]

is $LL(1)$, since $\text{First}_1(E) = \{\text{id}\}$
Topdown Parsing

Example 1:

\[
S \rightarrow \text{if} \ (E) \ S \ \text{else} \ S \ \mid \\
\quad \text{while} \ (E) \ S \ \mid \\
\quad E ;
\]
\[
E \rightarrow \ \text{id}
\]

is \(LL(1)\), since \(\text{First}_1(E) = \{\text{id}\}\)

Example 2:

\[
S \rightarrow \ \text{if} \ (E) \ S \ \text{else} \ S \ \mid \\
\quad \text{if} \ (E) \ S \ \mid \\
\quad \text{while} \ (E) \ S \ \mid \\
\quad E ;
\]
\[
E \rightarrow \ \text{id}
\]

... is not \(LL(k)\) for any \(k > 0\).
Lookahead Sets

**Definition: First\(_1\)-Sets**

For a set \( L \subseteq T^* \) we define:

\[
\text{First}_1(L) = \{ \epsilon \mid \epsilon \in L \} \cup \{ u \in T \mid \exists v \in T^* : uv \in L \}
\]

**Example:** \( S \rightarrow \epsilon \mid a \ S \ b \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( \text{First}_1(S) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \epsilon )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( a \ b )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( a \ a \ b \ b )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( a \ a \ a \ b \ b \ b )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lookahead Sets

**Definition: First₁-Sets**

For a set $L \subseteq T^*$ we define:

$$\text{First}_1(L) = \{ \epsilon \mid \epsilon \in L \} \cup \{ u \in T \mid \exists v \in T^* : uv \in L \}$$

**Example:**

$S \rightarrow \epsilon \mid a S b$

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First₁($S$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a a b b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a a a b b b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$\equiv$ the yield’s prefix of length 1
Lookahead Sets

Arithmetics:
\( \text{First}_1(\_ \,) \) is distributive with union and concatenation:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{First}_1(\emptyset) &= \emptyset \\
\text{First}_1(L_1 \cup L_2) &= \text{First}_1(L_1) \cup \text{First}_1(L_2) \\
\text{First}_1(L_1 \cdot L_2) &= \text{First}_1(\text{First}_1(L_1) \cdot \text{First}_1(L_2)) \\
&:= \text{First}_1(L_1) \odot_1 \text{First}_1(L_2)
\end{align*}
\]

\( \odot_1 \) being 1−concatenation
Lookahead Sets

Arithmetics:
First_1(\_\_) is distributive with union and concatenation:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{First}_1(\emptyset) & = \emptyset \\
\text{First}_1(L_1 \cup L_2) & = \text{First}_1(L_1) \cup \text{First}_1(L_2) \\
\text{First}_1(L_1 \cdot L_2) & = \text{First}_1(\text{First}_1(L_1) \cdot \text{First}_1(L_2)) \\
: & = \text{First}_1(L_1) \odot_1 \text{First}_1(L_2)
\end{align*}
\]

\(\odot_1\) being 1 – concatenation

**Definition: 1-concatenation**

Let \(L_1, L_2 \subseteq T \cup \{\epsilon\}\) with \(L_1 \neq \emptyset \neq L_2\). Then:

\[
L_1 \odot_1 L_2 = \begin{cases} 
L_1 & \text{if } \epsilon \not\in L_1 \\
(L_1 \setminus \{\epsilon\}) \cup L_2 & \text{otherwise}
\end{cases}
\]

If all rules of \(G\) are productive, then all sets \(\text{First}_1(A)\) are non-empty.
Lookahead Sets

For $\alpha \in (N \cup T)^*$ we are interested in the set:

$$\text{First}_1(\alpha) = \text{First}_1(\{ w \in T^* \mid \alpha \rightarrow^* w \})$$
Lookahead Sets

For $\alpha \in (N \cup T)^*$ we are interested in the set:

$$\text{First}_1(\alpha) = \text{First}_1(\{w \in T^* \mid \alpha \rightarrow^* w\})$$

**Idea:** Treat $\epsilon$ separately: $\text{First}_1(A) = F_\epsilon(A) \cup \{\epsilon \mid A \rightarrow^* \epsilon\}$

- Let $\text{empty}(X) = \text{true}$ iff $X \rightarrow^* \epsilon$.
- $F_\epsilon(X_1 \ldots X_m) = \bigcup_{i=1}^j F_\epsilon(X_i)$ if $\bigwedge_{i=1}^{j-1} \text{empty}(X_i) \land \neg \text{empty}(X_j)$.
Lookahead Sets

For $\alpha \in (N \cup T)^*$ we are interested in the set:

$$\text{First}_1(\alpha) = \text{First}_1(\{w \in T^* \mid \alpha \rightarrow^* w\})$$

Idea: Treat $\epsilon$ separately: $\text{First}_1(A) = F_\epsilon(A) \cup \{\epsilon \mid A \rightarrow^* \epsilon\}$

- Let $\text{empty}(X) = \text{true}$ iff $X \rightarrow^* \epsilon$.
- $F_\epsilon(X_1 \ldots X_m) = \bigcup_{i=1}^j F_\epsilon(X_i)$ if $\bigwedge_{i=1}^{j-1} \text{empty}(X_i) \land \neg \text{empty}(X_j)$

We characterize the $\epsilon$-free $\text{First}_1$-sets with an inequality system:

$$F_\epsilon(a) = \{a\} \quad \text{if} \quad a \in T$$

$$F_\epsilon(A) \supseteq F_\epsilon(X_j) \quad \text{if} \quad A \rightarrow X_1 \ldots X_m \in P,$$

$$\bigwedge_{i=1}^{j-1} \text{empty}(X_i)$$
Lookahead Sets

for example...

\[
E \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T \rightarrow T * F \mid F \\
F \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int}
\]

with \(\emptyset(E) = \emptyset(T) = \emptyset(F) = \text{false}\)
Lookahead Sets

for example...

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{name} \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]

with \(\text{empty}(E) = \text{empty}(T) = \text{empty}(F) = \text{false}\)

... we obtain:

\[
\begin{align*}
F_\epsilon(S') & \supseteq F_\epsilon(E) \\
F_\epsilon(E) & \supseteq F_\epsilon(T) \\
F_\epsilon(T) & \supseteq F_\epsilon(F) \\
F_\epsilon(F) & \supseteq \{(, \text{name}, \text{int}\}\}
\end{align*}
\]
Observation:
- The form of each inequality of these systems is:
  \[ x \supseteq y \quad \text{resp.} \quad x \supseteq d \]
  for variables \( x, y \) and \( d \in \mathbb{D} \).
- Such systems are called pure unification problems.
- Such problems can be solved in linear space/time.

For example:
\[ \mathbb{D} = 2\{a, b, c\} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
x_0 &\supseteq \{a\} \\
x_1 &\supseteq \{b\} \\
x_2 &\supseteq \{c\} \\
x_3 &\supseteq \{c\}
\end{align*}
\]
Proceeding:

- Create the **Variable Dependency Graph** for the inequality system.
Fast Computation of Lookahead Sets

Proceeding:
- Create the Variable Dependency Graph for the inequality system.
- Within a Strongly Connected Component (→ Tarjan) all variables have the same value.
Proceeding:

- Create the Variable Dependency Graph for the inequality system.
- Within a Strongly Connected Component (→ Tarjan) all variables have the same value.
- If there is no incoming edge for an SCC, its value is computed via the smallest upper bound of all values within the SCC.
Proceeding:

- Create the **Variable Dependency Graph** for the inequality system.
- Within a **Strongly Connected Component** (→ Tarjan) all variables have the same value.
- If there is no incoming edge for an SCC, its value is computed via the smallest upper bound of all values within the SCC.
- In case of incoming edges, their values are also to be considered for the upper bound.
Fast Computation of Lookahead Sets

... for our example grammar:

First\textsubscript{1}:

![Diagram showing the example grammar with symbols S', E, T, and F connected with arrows representing the grammar rules.]
Item Pushdown Automaton as LL(1)-Parser

back to the example: \( S' \rightarrow S \ $ \ \ S \rightarrow \epsilon \ | \ a \ S \ b \)
The transitions in the according Item Pushdown Automaton:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Transition 1</th>
<th>Transition 2</th>
<th>Transition 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet S \ $])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet S \ $], [S \rightarrow \bullet])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet S \ $])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet S \ $], [S \rightarrow \bullet a S b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow \bullet a S b])</td>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b], [S \rightarrow \bullet])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b], [S \rightarrow \bullet a S b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b], [S \rightarrow \bullet])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a S \bullet b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a \bullet S b], [S \rightarrow a S b \bullet])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a S \bullet b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a S \bullet b])</td>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>([S \rightarrow a S b \bullet])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet S \ $], [S \rightarrow \bullet])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow S \ $])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow \bullet S \ $], [S \rightarrow a S b \bullet])</td>
<td>(\epsilon)</td>
<td>([S' \rightarrow S \ $])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conflicts arise between transitions \((0, 1)\) or \((3, 4)\) resp..
... in detail: \[ S' \rightarrow S \, \$ \] \[ S \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \mid a \, S \, b^1 \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First$_1$(input)</th>
<th>$$</th>
<th>$a$</th>
<th>$b$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$S$</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
\begin{array}{c}
i_0 \quad S' \\
i_1 \quad A_i \\
i_n \quad S \\
n \quad \beta_n \\
0 \quad \beta_0 \\
1 \quad \beta_1 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
w \in \text{First}_1( \quad )
\]
Item Pushdown Automaton as LL(1)-Parser

... in detail: \[ S' \rightarrow S \, \$ \quad S \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \mid a \, S \, b^1 \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First$_1$(input)</th>
<th>$$</th>
<th>$a$</th>
<th>$b$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$S$</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ w \in \text{First}_1( \) \]
Item Pushdown Automaton as LL(1)-Parser

Inequality system for 

\[ B = \text{First}_1(\beta) \circ_1 \cdots \circ_1 \text{First}_1(\beta_0) \]

\[ \text{Follow}_1(B) \supseteq \{ \} \]

\[ \text{Follow}_1(B) \supseteq \text{Follow}_1(A) \]

\[ w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \circ_1 \text{First}_1(\beta) \circ_1 \cdots \circ_1 \text{First}_1(\beta_0) \]

\[ w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \circ_1 \text{Follow}_1(B) \]
Item Pushdown Automaton as LL(1)-Parser

Inequality system for $\text{Follow}_1(B) = \text{First}_1(\beta) \ominus_1 \ldots \ominus_1 \text{First}_1(\beta_0)$

$\text{Follow}_1(S) \supseteq \{\$\}$
$\text{Follow}_1(B) \supseteq F_{\epsilon}(X_j)$ if $A \rightarrow \alpha B X_1 \ldots X_m \in P$, \(\text{empty}(X_1) \land \ldots \land \text{empty}(X_{j-1})\)
$\text{Follow}_1(B) \supseteq \text{Follow}_1(A)$ if $A \rightarrow \alpha B X_1 \ldots X_m \in P$, \(\text{empty}(X_1) \land \ldots \land \text{empty}(X_m)\)$
Item Pushdown Automaton as LL(1)-Parser

Is $G$ an $LL(1)$-grammar, we can index a lookahead-table with items and nonterminals:

**LL(1)-Lookahead Table**

We set $M[B, w] = i$ with $B \rightarrow \gamma^i$ if $w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \odot_1 \text{Follow}_1(B)$

... for example:  

$$S' \rightarrow S \; \$ \quad S \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \quad | \quad a \; S \; b^1$$
Item Pushdown Automaton as LL(1)-Parser

Is $G$ an $LL(1)$-grammar, we can index a lookahead-table with items and nonterminals:

**LL(1)-Lookahead Table**

We set $M[B, w] = i$ with $B \rightarrow \gamma^i$ if $w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \circ_1 \text{Follow}_1(B)$

... for example:  

\[
S' \rightarrow S \, \$  \quad S \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \quad | \quad a \, S \, b^1
\]

$\text{First}_1(S') = \{\epsilon, a\}$
Is $G$ an $LL(1)$-grammar, we can index a lookahead-table with items and nonterminals:

**LL(1)-Lookahead Table**

We set $M[B, w] = i$ with $B \rightarrow \gamma^i$ if $w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \odot_1 \text{Follow}_1(B)$

... for example:

$S' \rightarrow S \; \$  \quad S \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \quad | \quad a \; S \; b^1$

First$_1(S') = \{\epsilon, a\}$  \quad Follow$_1(S) = \{b, \$\}$
Is $G$ an $LL(1)$-grammar, we can index a lookahead-table with items and nonterminals:

**LL(1)-Lookahead Table**

We set $M[B, w] = i$ with $B \rightarrow \gamma^i$ if $w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \odot_1 \text{Follow}_1(B)$

... for example:

$$S' \rightarrow S \; \$$ $S \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \; | \; aSb^1$$

First$_1(S') = \{\epsilon, a\}$

Follow$_1(S) = \{b, $\}$

$S$-rule 0 : \hspace{1cm} First$_1(\epsilon) \odot_1 \text{Follow}_1(S') = \{b, $\}$

$S$-rule 1 : \hspace{1cm} First$_1(aSb) \odot_1 \text{Follow}_1(S) = \{a\}$
Is $G$ an $LL(1)$-grammar, we can index a lookahead-table with items and nonterminals:

**LL(1)-Lookahead Table**

We set $M[B, w] = i$ with $B \rightarrow \gamma^i$ if $w \in \text{First}_1(\gamma) \circ_1 \text{Follow}_1(B)$

... for example:

$S' \rightarrow S \$ \quad S \rightarrow \epsilon \quad | \quad a \ S \ b$

First$_1(S') = \{\epsilon, a\}$ \quad Follow$_1(S) = \{b, \$\}$

$S$-rule 0 :

First$_1(\epsilon) \circ_1 \text{Follow}_1(S') = \{b, \$\}$

$S$-rule 1 :

First$_1(aSb) \circ_1 \text{Follow}_1(S') = \{a\}$
For example: \[ S' \to S \$ \quad S \to \epsilon^0 \mid aSb^1 \]

The transitions of the according Item Pushdown Automaton:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Transition</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Next State</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S $ ]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S $ ] [( S \to \bullet )]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S $ ]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S $ ] [( S \to \bullet aSb )]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>[ S \to \bullet aSb ]</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ] [( S \to \bullet )]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ] [( S \to \bullet aSb )]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ] [( S \to \bullet )]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S \to aS \bullet b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>[ S \to a \bullet Sb ] [( S \to aSb \bullet )]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S \to aS \bullet b ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>[ S \to aS \bullet b ]</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>[ S \to aSb \bullet ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S $ ] [( S \to \bullet )]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S' \to S \bullet $ ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>[ S' \to \bullet S $ ] [( S \to aSb \bullet )]</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>[ S' \to S \bullet $ ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lookahead table:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{Symbol} & $\$ & a & b \\
\hline
S & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]
Attention:

Many grammars are not $LL(k)$!

A reason for that is:

Definition

Grammar $G$ is called left-recursive, if

$$A \rightarrow^+ A\beta \quad \text{for an} \quad A \in N, \ \beta \in (T \cup N)^*$$
Left Recursion

Attention:
Many grammars are not $LL(k)$!

A reason for that is:

**Definition**
Grammar $G$ is called **left-recursive**, if

$$A \to^+ A\beta \quad \text{for an} \quad A \in N, \beta \in (T \cup N)^*$$

**Example:**

$$
\begin{align*}
E & \to E + T & | & T \\
T & \to T \star F & | & F \\
F & \to ( E ) & | & \text{name} & | & \text{int}
\end{align*}
$$

... is left-recursive
Left Recursion

**Theorem:**
Let a grammar \( G \) be reduced and left-recursive, then \( G \) is not \( LL(k) \) for any \( k \).

**Proof:**

Let wlog. \( A \rightarrow A \beta \mid \alpha \in P \)
and \( A \) be reachable from \( S \)

**Assumption:** \( G \) is \( LL(k) \)
Left Recursion

**Theorem:**
Let a grammar $G$ be reduced and left-recursive, then $G$ is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$.

**Proof:**
Let wlog. $A \rightarrow A \beta | \alpha \in P$
and $A$ be reachable from $S$

**Assumption:** $G$ is $LL(k)$

$\Rightarrow \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^n \gamma) \cap \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^{n+1} \gamma) = \emptyset$
Left Recursion

**Theorem:**
Let a grammar $G$ be reduced and left-recursive, then $G$ is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$.

**Proof:**
Let wlog. $A \rightarrow A\beta | \alpha \in P$ and $A$ be reachable from $S$.

**Assumption:** $G$ is $LL(k)$

$$\Rightarrow \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^n \gamma) \cap \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^{n+1} \gamma) = \emptyset$$
Theorem:
Let a grammar $G$ be reduced and left-recursive, then $G$ is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$.

Proof:
Let wlog. $A \rightarrow A\beta | \alpha \in P$ and $A$ be reachable from $S$.

Assumption: $G$ is $LL(k)$

$\Rightarrow$ $\text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^n \gamma) \cap \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^{n+1} \gamma) = \emptyset$
Left Recursion

**Theorem:**
Let a grammar $G$ be reduced and left-recursive, then $G$ is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$.

**Proof:**
Let wlog. $A \rightarrow A \beta | \alpha \in P$ and $A$ be reachable from $S$.

**Assumption:** $G$ is $LL(k)$

$$\Rightarrow \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^n \gamma) \cap \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^{n+1} \gamma) = \emptyset$$
Left Recursion

**Theorem:**
Let a grammar $G$ be reduced and left-recursive, then $G$ is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$.

**Proof:**

Let wlog. $A \rightarrow A \beta | \alpha \in P$ and $A$ be reachable from $S$

**Assumption:** $G$ is $LL(k)$

$\Rightarrow \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^n \gamma) \cap \text{First}_k(\alpha \beta^{n+1} \gamma) = \emptyset$

**Case 1:** $\beta \rightarrow^* \epsilon$ — Contradiction !!!

**Case 2:** $\beta \rightarrow^* w \neq \epsilon \implies \text{First}_k(\alpha w^k \gamma) \cap \text{First}_k(\alpha w^{k+1} \gamma) \neq \emptyset$
Right-Regular Context-Free Parsing

Recurring scheme in programming languages: Lists of sth...
\[ S \rightarrow b \mid S \ a \ b \]

Alternative idea: Regular Expressions
\[ S \rightarrow ( \ b \ a \ )^* \ b \]
Right-Regular Context-Free Parsing

Recurring scheme in programming languages: Lists of sth...

\[ S \rightarrow b \mid S \, a \, b \]

Alternative idea: Regular Expressions

\[ S \rightarrow ( \, b \, a \, )^* \, b \]

**Definition: Right-Regular Context-Free Grammar**

A right-regular context-free grammar (RR-CFG) is a 4-tuple \( G = (N, T, P, S) \) with:

- \( N \) the set of nonterminals,
- \( T \) the set of terminals,
- \( P \) the set of rules with regular expressions of symbols as rhs,
- \( S \in N \) the start symbol
Right-Regular Context-Free Parsing

Recurring scheme in programming languages: Lists of sth...
\[ S \rightarrow b \mid S\ a\ b \]

Alternative idea: Regular Expressions
\[ S \rightarrow (\ b\ a\ )^*\ b \]

**Definition: Right-Regular Context-Free Grammar**

A right-regular context-free grammar (RR-CFG) is a 4-tuple \( G = (N, T, P, S) \) with:
- \( N \) the set of nonterminals,
- \( T \) the set of terminals,
- \( P \) the set of rules with regular expressions of symbols as rhs,
- \( S \in N \) the start symbol

**Example: Arithmetic Expressions**
\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow T\ (\ +\ T\ )^* \\
T & \rightarrow F\ (\ *\ F\ )^* \\
F & \rightarrow (\ E\ ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

$$
\begin{align*}
A & \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle & \text{if } & A \rightarrow \alpha \in P \\
\langle \alpha \rangle & \rightarrow \alpha & \text{if } & \alpha \in N \cup T \\
\langle \epsilon \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon & \text{if } & \alpha \in N \cup T \\
\langle \alpha^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon | \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha^* \rangle & \text{if } & \alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle & \text{if } & \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 | \ldots | \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle | \ldots | \langle \alpha_n \rangle & \text{if } & \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}
\end{align*}
$$

... and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M_{\langle G \rangle}^L$
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

\[
\begin{align*}
A & \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle & \text{if} & & A \rightarrow \alpha \in P \\
\langle \alpha \rangle & \rightarrow \alpha & \text{if} & & \alpha \in N \cup T \\
\langle \epsilon \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \\
\langle \alpha^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon | \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha^* \rangle & \text{if} & & \alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle & \text{if} & & \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 | \ldots | \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle | \ldots | \langle \alpha_n \rangle & \text{if} & & \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}
\end{align*}
\]

... and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M^L_{\langle G \rangle}$

Example: Arithmetic Expressions cont’d

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow T \left( + T \right)^* \\
T & \rightarrow F \left( * F \right)^* \\
F & \rightarrow \left( E \right) | \text{name} | \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

\[
\begin{align*}
A & \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle & \text{if } A \rightarrow \alpha \in P \\
\langle \alpha \rangle & \rightarrow \alpha & \text{if } \alpha \in N \cup T \\
\langle \epsilon \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \\
\langle \alpha^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha^* \rangle & \text{if } \alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle & \text{if } \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \mid \ldots \mid \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \mid \ldots \mid \langle \alpha_n \rangle & \text{if } \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}
\end{align*}
\]

\ldots and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M^L_{\langle G \rangle}$

Example: Arithmetic Expressions cont’d

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow \langle T \ ( + T)^* \rangle \\
T & \rightarrow F \ ( * F )^* \\
F & \rightarrow ( \ E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int} \\
\langle T \ ( + T)^* \rangle & \rightarrow T \ \langle ( + T)^* \rangle
\end{align*}
\]
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

- $A \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle$ if $A \rightarrow \alpha \in P$
- $\langle \alpha \rangle \rightarrow \alpha$ if $\alpha \in N \cup T$
- $\langle \epsilon \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon$
- $\langle \alpha \ast \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha \ast \rangle$ if $\alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}$
- $\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle$ if $\alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}$
- $\langle \alpha_1 \mid \ldots \mid \alpha_n \rangle \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \mid \ldots \mid \langle \alpha_n \rangle$ if $\alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}$

... and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M_L^{\langle G \rangle}$

Example: Arithmetic Expressions cont’d

- $S \rightarrow E$
- $E \rightarrow \langle T \ ( + T \ast ) \rangle$
- $T \rightarrow F \ ( * F \ast )$
- $F \rightarrow ( E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int}$
- $\langle T \ ( + T \ast ) \rangle \rightarrow T \langle ( + T \ast ) \rangle$
- $\langle ( + T \ast ) \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle + T \rangle \langle ( + T \ast ) \rangle$
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

$$
\begin{align*}
A & \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad A \rightarrow \alpha \in P \\
\langle \alpha \rangle & \rightarrow \alpha \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha \in N \cup T \\
\langle \epsilon \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \\
\langle \alpha^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha^* \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \mid \ldots \mid \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \mid \ldots \mid \langle \alpha_n \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}
\end{align*}
$$

... and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M_L^G$

Example: Arithmetic Expressions cont’d

$$
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow \langle T ( + T)^* \rangle \\
T & \rightarrow F ( * F )^* \\
F & \rightarrow ( E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int} \\
\langle T ( + T)^* \rangle & \rightarrow T \langle ( + T)^* \rangle \\
\langle ( + T)^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle + T \rangle \langle ( + T)^* \rangle \\
\langle + T \rangle & \rightarrow + T
\end{align*}
$$
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

$$
\begin{align*}
A & \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad A \rightarrow \alpha \in P \\
\langle \alpha \rangle & \rightarrow \alpha \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha \in N \cup T \\
\langle \epsilon \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon \\
\langle \alpha^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon | \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha^* \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N} \\
\langle \alpha_1 | \ldots | \alpha_n \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle | \ldots | \langle \alpha_n \rangle \quad \text{if} \quad \alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}
\end{align*}
$$

... and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M^L_{\langle G \rangle}$

**Example: Arithmetic Expressions cont’d**

$$
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow \langle T ( + T)^* \rangle \\
T & \rightarrow \langle F ( * F )^* \rangle \\
F & \rightarrow ( E ) | \text{name} | \text{int} \\
\langle T ( + T)^* \rangle & \rightarrow T \langle ( + T)^* \rangle \\
\langle ( + T)^* \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon | \langle + T \rangle \langle ( + T)^* \rangle \\
\langle + T \rangle & \rightarrow + T
\end{align*}
$$
Idea 1: Rewrite the rules from $G$ to $\langle G \rangle$:

- $A \rightarrow \langle \alpha \rangle$ if $A \rightarrow \alpha \in P$
- $\langle \alpha \rangle \rightarrow \alpha$ if $\alpha \in N \cup T$
- $\langle \epsilon \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon$
- $\langle \alpha^* \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle \alpha \rangle \langle \alpha^* \rangle$ if $\alpha \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}$
- $\langle \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_n \rangle \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \ldots \langle \alpha_n \rangle$ if $\alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}$
- $\langle \alpha_1 \mid \ldots \mid \alpha_n \rangle \rightarrow \langle \alpha_1 \rangle \mid \ldots \mid \langle \alpha_n \rangle$ if $\alpha_i \in \text{Regex}_{T,N}$

...and generate the according LL(k)-Parser $M^L_{\langle G \rangle}$

Example: Arithmetic Expressions cont’d

- $S \rightarrow E$
- $E \rightarrow \langle T ( + T)^* \rangle$
- $T \rightarrow \langle F ( \ast F )^* \rangle$
- $F \rightarrow ( E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int}$
- $\langle T ( + T)^* \rangle \rightarrow T \langle ( + T)^* \rangle$
- $\langle ( + T)^* \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle + T \rangle \langle ( + T)^* \rangle$
- $\langle + T \rangle \rightarrow + T$
- $\langle F ( \ast F )^* \rangle \rightarrow F \langle ( \ast F )^* \rangle$
- $\langle ( \ast F )^* \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon \mid \langle \ast F \rangle \langle ( \ast F )^* \rangle$
- $\langle \ast F \rangle \rightarrow \ast F$
Definition:

An \( RR-CFG \ G \) is called \( RLL(1) \), if the corresponding CFG \( \langle G \rangle \) is an \( LL(1) \) grammar.

Discussion

- directly yields the table driven parser \( M^L_{\langle G \rangle} \) for \( RLL(1) \) grammars
- however: mapping regular expressions to recursive productions unnecessarily strains the stack
  \( \rightarrow \) instead directly construct automaton in the style of Berry-Sethi
Idea 2: Recursive Descent RLL Parsers:

Recursive descent RLL(1)-parsers are an alternative to table-driven parsers; apart from the usual function \texttt{scan()}, we generate a program frame with the lookahead function \texttt{expect()} and the main parsing method \texttt{parse()}:

```java
int next;

boolean expect(Set E) {
    if (\{ε, next\} \cap E = \emptyset) {
        cerr << "Expected" << E << "found" << next;
        return false;
    }
    return true;
}

void parse() {
    next = scan();
    if (!expect(First₁(S))) exit(0);
    S();
    if (!expect({EOF})) exit(0);
}
```
Idea 2: Recursive Descent RLL Parsers:

For each $A \rightarrow \alpha \in P$, we introduce:

```c
void A()
{
    generate(\alpha)
}
```

with the meta-program `generate` being defined by structural decomposition of $\alpha$:

\[
generate(r_1 \ldots r_k) = \begin{cases} 
    generate(r_1) & \text{if } !\text{expect(First}_1(r_2)) \text{ exit}(0); \\ 
    generate(r_2) & \vdots \\ 
    generate(r_k) & \text{if } !\text{expect(First}_1(r_k)) \text{ exit}(0); \\
    \end{cases}
\]

\[
generate(\epsilon) = ; \\
generate(a) = \text{consume}(); \\
generate(A) = A();
\]
Idea 2: Recursive Descent RLL Parsers:

\[
generate(r^*) = \text{while} \ (\text{next} \in F_e(r)) \{
\text{generate}(r)
\}
\]

\[
generate(r_1 \mid \ldots \mid r_k) = \text{switch} (\text{next}) \{
\text{labels}(\text{First}_1(r_1)) \text{ generate}(r_1) \text{ break ;}
\ldots
\text{labels}(\text{First}_1(r_k)) \text{ generate}(r_k) \text{ break ;}
\}
\]

\[
\text{labels}\{\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_m\} = \text{label}(\alpha_1): \ldots \text{ label}(\alpha_m):
\]

\[
\text{label}(\alpha) = \text{case} \ \alpha
\]

\[
\text{label}(\epsilon) = \text{default}
\]
A practical implementation of an $RLL(1)$-parser via recursive descent is a straigh-forward idea. However, only a subset of the deterministic context-free languages can be parsed this way. As soon as $\text{First}_1(\_)$ sets are not disjoint any more,
Discussion

- A practical implementation of an $RLL(1)$-parser via recursive descent is a straight-forward idea.
- However, only a subset of the deterministic contextfree languages can be parsed this way.
- As soon as $\text{First}_1(\_)$ sets are not disjoint any more,
  - Solution 1: For many accessibly written grammars, the alternation between right hand sides happens too early. Keeping the common prefixes of right hand sides joined and introducing a new production for the actual diverging sentence forms often helps.
  - Solution 2: Introduce ranked grammars, and decide conflicting lookahead always in favour of the higher ranked alternative → relation to $LL$ parsing not so clear any more → not so clear for $_^*$ operator how to decide
  - Solution 3: Going from $LL(1)$ to $LL(k)$
    The size of the occurring sets is rapidly increasing with larger $k$
    Unfortunately, even $LL(k)$ parsers are not sufficient to accept all deterministic contextfree languages. (regular lookahead → $LL(\ast)$)
- In practical systems, this often motivates the implementation of $k = 1$ only.
Chapter 4:
Bottom-up Analysis
Shift-Reduce Parser

Idea:
We *delay* the decision whether to reduce until we know, whether the input matches the right-hand-side of a rule!

Construction: Shift-Reduce parser $M^R_G$

- The input is shifted successively to the pushdown.
- Is there a complete right-hand side (a handle) atop the pushdown, it is replaced (reduced) by the corresponding left-hand side
Shift-Reduce Parser

Example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow AB \\
A & \rightarrow a \\
B & \rightarrow b
\end{align*}
\]

The pushdown automaton:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>States:</th>
<th>$q_0$, $f$, $a$, $b$, $A$, $B$, $S$;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start state:</td>
<td>$q_0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End state:</td>
<td>$f$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>$q_0$</th>
<th>$a$</th>
<th>$q_0$ $a$</th>
<th>$A$</th>
<th>$B$</th>
<th>$S$</th>
<th>$f$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$q_0$</td>
<td>$a$</td>
<td>$q_0$</td>
<td>$A$</td>
<td>$B$</td>
<td>$S$</td>
<td>$f$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$A$</td>
<td>$b$</td>
<td>$A$</td>
<td>$S$</td>
<td>$f$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$B$</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>$B$</td>
<td>$f$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$AB$</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>$S$</td>
<td>$f$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_0$ $S$</td>
<td>$\epsilon$</td>
<td>$f$</td>
<td>$f$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Shift-Reduce Parser

Construction:
In general, we create an automaton $M^R_G = (Q, T, \delta, q_0, F)$ with:

- $Q = T \cup N \cup \{q_0, f\}$ (\(q_0, f\) fresh);
- $F = \{f\}$;
- Transitions:

$$\delta = \{ (q, x, q_x) \mid q \in Q, x \in T \} \cup \{ (\alpha, \epsilon, A) \mid A \rightarrow \alpha \in P \} \cup \{(q_0, S, \epsilon, f)\} \quad \text{// finish}$$

Example-computation:
$$\left( q_0, ab \right) \vdash \left( q_0, a \right) \vdash \left( q_0, A, b \right) \vdash \left( q_0, A \ b, \epsilon \right) \vdash \left( q_0, AB, \epsilon \right) \vdash \left( q_0, S, \epsilon \right) \vdash \left( f, \epsilon \right)$$
Shift-Reduce Parser

Construction:
In general, we create an automaton $M^R_G = (Q, T, \delta, q_0, F)$ with:

- $Q = T \cup N \cup \{q_0, f\}$ (q_0, f fresh);
- $F = \{f\}$;
- Transitions:

\[
\delta = \{(q, x, qx) \mid q \in Q, x \in T\} \cup \quad // \quad \text{Shift-transitions}
\{(\alpha, \epsilon, A) \mid A \rightarrow \alpha \in P\} \cup \quad // \quad \text{Reduce-transitions}
\{(q_0 S, \epsilon, f)\} \quad // \quad \text{finish}
\]

Example-computation:

\[
(q_0, ab) \vdash (q_0 a, b) \vdash (q_0 A, b) \\
\vdash (q_0 A b, \epsilon) \vdash (q_0 AB, \epsilon) \\
\vdash (q_0 S, \epsilon) \vdash (f, \epsilon)
\]
Shift-Reduce Parser

Observation:

- The sequence of reductions corresponds to a reverse rightmost-derivation for the input.
- To prove correctness, we have to prove:

  $$(\epsilon, w) \vdash^* (A, \epsilon) \iff A \rightarrow^* w$$

- The shift-reduce pushdown automaton $M_G^R$ is in general also non-deterministic.
- For a deterministic parsing algorithm, we have to identify computation-states for reduction

  $\implies$ LR-Parsing
Viable Prefixes and Admissible Items

Generic Agreement:

In a sequence of configurations of $M_G^R$

\[(q_0 \alpha \gamma, v) \vdash (q_0 \alpha B, v) \vdash^* (q_0 S, \epsilon)\]

we call $\alpha \gamma$ a viable prefix for the complete item $[B \rightarrow \gamma \bullet]$.

Problem:
Find the items, for which the content of $M_G^R$’s stack is the viable prefix.... admissible items
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:
counter * 2 + 40

Pushdown:
( $q_0$ )

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T^0 & T & \rightarrow T * F^0 & F & \rightarrow (E)^0 \\
 & & & & & name^1 \quad int^2
\end{align*}
\]
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

**Idea:** Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

**Input:**
\[
* 2 + 40
\]

**Pushdown:**
\[
( q_0 \text{ name } )
\]

\[
E \quad \rightarrow \quad E + T^0 \quad | \quad T^1 \\
T \quad \rightarrow \quad T * F^0 \quad | \quad F^1 \\
F \quad \rightarrow \quad ( E )^0 \quad | \quad \text{name}^1 \quad | \quad \text{int}^2
\]
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:

$\ast 2 + 40$

Pushdown:

$(q_0 F)$

$E \rightarrow E + T^0 \mid T^1$

$T \rightarrow T * F^0 \mid F^1$

$F \rightarrow (E)^0 \mid \text{name}^1 \mid \text{int}^2$
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea:  Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

Input:

\[ * 2 + 40 \]

Pushdown:

\( ( q_0 T ) \)

\[
E \to E + T \mid T \to T * F \mid F \to ( E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int} \\
T \to T * F \mid F \to ( E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int} \\
F \to ( E ) \mid \text{name} \mid \text{int} \]

Diagram:

```
  E 0
   / \    \
  E 1 +  T 1
     /     \
   T 0    F 2
      /     |
     *     int
    /     /   \
   F 1    |
      /     |
     name   int
```
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:

2 + 40

Pushdown: $(q_0 T^*)$

```
E → E+T^0 | T^1
T → T*F^0 | F^1
F → (E)^0 | name^1 | int^2
```
Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:

\[ + \ 40 \]

Pushdown: 
\((q_0 \ T \ * \ \text{int})\)

Production rules:

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T^0 \mid T^1 \\
T & \rightarrow T * F^0 \mid F^1 \\
F & \rightarrow (E)^0 \mid \text{name}^1 \mid \text{int}^2
\end{align*}
\]
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

Input:

+ 40

Pushdown:

$(q_0 \ T \ast \ F)$

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T^0 & T & \rightarrow T \ast F^0 \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F^0 & F & \rightarrow (E)^0 \\
F & \rightarrow (E)^0 & \text{name} & \rightarrow \text{name}^1 & \text{int} & \rightarrow \text{int}^2
\end{align*}
\]
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

Input:

```
+ 40
```

Pushdown:

```
( q_0 T )
```

Production Rules:

```
E → E+T^0 \mid T^1
T → T*F^0 \mid F^1
F → ( E )^0 \mid \text{name}^1 \mid \text{int}^2
```
Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:

$$+ 40$$

Pushdown:

$$(q_0 \ E)$$

The grammar rules are:

- $E \rightarrow E + T^0 \mid T^1$
- $T \rightarrow T * F^0 \mid F^1$
- $F \rightarrow (E)^0 \mid \text{name}^1 \mid \text{int}^2$
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

Input:

40

Pushdown:

( $q_0$ $E$ $+$ )

\[
E \rightarrow E + T^0 \quad | \quad T^1 \\
T \rightarrow T * F^0 \quad | \quad F^1 \\
F \rightarrow (E)^0 \quad | \quad \text{name}^1 \quad | \quad \text{int}^2
\]
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

Input:

Pushdown: $(q_0 \ E + \ int)$

$E \rightarrow E+T^0 | T^1$

$T \rightarrow T*F^0 | F^1$

$F \rightarrow (E)^0 | \text{name}^1 | \text{int}^2$
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

**Idea:** Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

**Input:**

\[(q_0 \ E + \ F)\]

**Pushdown:**

\[
E \rightarrow E + T^0 \ | \ T^1 \\
T \rightarrow T * F^0 \ | \ F^1 \\
F \rightarrow (E)^0 \ | \ name^1 \ | \ int^2
\]
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

**Idea:** Observe a successful run of $M_G^R$!

**Input:**

**Pushdown:**

\[ ( q_0 \ E + T ) \]

\[
egin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E+T^0 \quad | \quad T^1 \\
T & \rightarrow T*F^0 \quad | \quad F^1 \\
F & \rightarrow ( E )^0 \quad | \quad \text{name}^1 \quad | \quad \text{int}^2
\end{align*}
\]
**Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers**

**Idea:** Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

**Input:**

**Pushdown:**

( $q_0 \ E$ )

```
E → E+T^0 | T^1
T → T*F^0 | F^1
F → ( E )^0 | name^1 | int^2
```
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M_{G}^{R}$!

Input:

Pushdown: $(f)$

$$E \rightarrow E + T^0 \quad | \quad T^1$$
$$T \rightarrow T * F^0 \quad | \quad F^1$$
$$F \rightarrow (E)^0 \quad | \quad \text{name}^1 \quad | \quad \text{int}^2$$
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:

$$+ 40$$

Pushdown:

$$( q_0 ( T \ast F ) )$$

$$E \; \rightarrow \; E + T^0 \quad | \quad T^1$$

$$T \; \rightarrow \; T \ast F^0 \quad | \quad F^1$$

$$F \; \rightarrow \; ( E )^0 \quad | \quad \text{name}^1 \quad | \quad \text{int}^2$$
Reverse Rightmost Derivations in Shift-Reduce-Parsers

Idea: Observe a successful run of $M^R_G$!

Input:

Pushdown: $(q_0 E + F)$

Result:
- the stack contents corresponds to sequences of symbols, produced as temporary leafs left of the rightmost occurrence of a non-terminal during rightmost derivations starting from $S$.
- we focus on the last expansion wrt. rightmost-derivation
Admissible Items

The item \([B \rightarrow \gamma \bullet \beta]\) is called admissible for \(\alpha\gamma\) iff

\(S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha B\ v:\)

... with \(\alpha = \alpha_1 \ldots \alpha_m\)
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during *rightmost*-derivation

\[ S' \rightarrow \bullet E \]
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during *rightmost*-derivation

```
S' → •E

E → •E+T

E → •T
```
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during \textit{rightmost}-derivation

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow \bullet E \\
E & \rightarrow \bullet E + T \\
E & \rightarrow \bullet T
\end{align*}
\]
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during \textit{rightmost}-derivation

\[
S' \rightarrow \bullet E \\
E \rightarrow \bullet E + T \\
E \rightarrow \bullet T \\
T \rightarrow \bullet T * F \\
T \rightarrow \bullet F
\]
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation

Diagram:
- $S' \rightarrow \bullet E$
- $E \rightarrow \bullet E + T$
- $E \rightarrow \bullet T$
- $T \rightarrow \bullet T \ast F$
- $T \rightarrow \bullet F$
- $F \rightarrow \bullet \text{int}$
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation

```
S' → E
E → E + T
E → T
T → T * F
F → (E)
F → int
```
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during *rightmost*-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during *rightmost*-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
An automaton...  
- tracing admissible items in its states  
- consuming the symbols accumulated during *rightmost*-derivation

Characteristic Automaton

$$S' \rightarrow \bullet E$$

$$S' \rightarrow E\bullet$$

$$E \rightarrow \bullet E + T$$

$$E \rightarrow E \bullet T$$

$$E \rightarrow E + \bullet T$$

$$E \rightarrow E + T\bullet$$

$$T \rightarrow \bullet T * F$$

$$T \rightarrow T \bullet * F$$

$$T \rightarrow T * \bullet F$$

$$T \rightarrow \bullet F$$

$$T \rightarrow \bullet (E')$$

$$T \rightarrow \bullet \text{int}$$

$$F \rightarrow \bullet \text{int}$$
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during **rightmost**-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during \textit{rightmost}-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during *rightmost*-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...

- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during rightmost-derivation
Characteristic Automaton

An automaton...
- tracing admissible items in its states
- consuming the symbols accumulated during \textit{rightmost}-derivation

```
S' \rightarrow • E

E \rightarrow • E + T

E \rightarrow • T

T \rightarrow • T * F

T \rightarrow • F

F \rightarrow • (E)

F \rightarrow • int

E \rightarrow •

F \rightarrow int
```
Characteristic Automaton

Observation:
One can now consume the shift-reduce parser’s pushdown with the characteristic automaton: If the input \((N \cup T)^*\) for the characteristic automaton corresponds to a viable prefix, its state contains the admissible items.

**States:** Items

**Start state:** \([S' \rightarrow \cdot S]\)

**Final states:** \([B \rightarrow \gamma \cdot] \mid B \rightarrow \gamma \in P\)

**Transitions:**

1. \([[A \rightarrow \alpha \cdot X \beta], X, [A \rightarrow \alpha X \cdot \beta])], \quad X \in (N \cup T), A \rightarrow \alpha X \beta \in P;
2. \([[A \rightarrow \alpha \cdot B \beta], \epsilon, [B \rightarrow \cdot \gamma])], \quad A \rightarrow \alpha B \beta, \ B \rightarrow \gamma \in P;

The automaton \(c(G)\) is called **characteristic automaton** for \(G\).
The canonical $LR(0)$-automaton $LR(G)$ is created from $c(G)$ by:

1. performing arbitrarily many $\epsilon$-transitions after every consuming transition
2. performing the powerset construction

... for example:
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

The canonical $LR(0)$-automaton $LR(G)$ is created from $c(G)$ by:

1. performing arbitrarily many $\epsilon$-transitions after every consuming transition
2. performing the powerset construction
3. Idea: or rather apply characteristic automaton construction to powersets directly?

... for example:
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad \mid \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad \mid \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad \mid \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
 Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[
S' \rightarrow E \\
E \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\]
Canonical LR(0)-Automaton

For example:

\[ S' \rightarrow E \]
\[ E \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \]
\[ T \rightarrow T * F \quad | \quad F \]
\[ F \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int} \]
Observation:

The canonical $LR(0)$-automaton can be created directly from the grammar. For this we need a helper function $\delta^*_\epsilon$ ($\epsilon$-closure)

$$
\delta^*_\epsilon(q) = q \cup \{ [B \rightarrow \bullet \gamma] \mid B \rightarrow \gamma \in P, \quad
\begin{align*}
&A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B' \beta' \in q, \\
&B' \rightarrow^* B \beta
\end{align*}
\}
$$

We define:

- **States:** Sets of items;
- **Start state:** $\delta^*_\epsilon \{ [S' \rightarrow \bullet S] \}$
- **Final states:** $\{ q \mid [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet] \in q \}$
- **Transitions:** $\delta(q, X) = \delta^*_\epsilon \{ [A \rightarrow \alpha X \bullet \beta] \mid [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet X \beta] \in q \}$
LR(0)-Parser

Idea for a parser:

- The parser manages a viable prefix $\alpha = X_1 \ldots X_m$ on the pushdown and uses $LR(G)$, to identify reduction spots.
- It can reduce with $A \rightarrow \gamma$, if $[A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet]$ is admissible for $\alpha$.

Optimization:

We push the states instead of the $X_i$ in order not to process the pushdown’s content with the automaton anew all the time.
Reduction with $A \rightarrow \gamma$ leads to popping the uppermost $|\gamma|$ states and continue with the state on top of the stack and input $A$.

Attention:

This parser is only deterministic, if each final state of the canonical $LR(0)$-automaton is conflict free.
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

\[ \text{int } \ast \text{ int } + \text{ int} \]
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

* int + int
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

* int + int
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

* int + int
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

\[ \text{int} + \text{int} \]
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

```
+ int
```
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

```
+ int
```
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

```
+ int
```
LR(0)-Parser

Example:

```
+ int
```
Example: 

```
int 
```
LR(0)-Parser

Example:
LR(0)-Parser

Example:
LR(0)-Parser

Example:
LR(0)-Parser

Example:
LR(0)-Parser

Example:
... we observe:

The final states $q_1, q_2, q_9$ contain more than one admissible item
⇒ non deterministic!
LR(0)-Parser

The construction of the $LR(0)$-parser:

**States:** $Q \cup \{f\}$ \hspace{1cm} ($f$ fresh)

**Start state:** $q_0$

**Final state:** $f$

**Transitions:**

**Shift:** $(p, a, pq)$ if $q = \delta(p, a) \neq \emptyset$

**Reduce:** $(pq_1 \cdots q_m, \epsilon, pq)$ if $[A \rightarrow X_1 \cdots X_m \bullet] \in q_m,$ $q = \delta(p, A)$

**Finish:** $(q_0 p, \epsilon, f)$ if $[S' \rightarrow S \bullet] \in p$

with $LR(G) = (Q, T, \delta, q_0, F').$
Correctness:

we show:

The accepting computations of an $LR(0)$-parser are one-to-one related to those of a shift-reduce parser $M^R_G$.

we conclude:

- The accepted language is exactly $\mathcal{L}(G)
- The sequence of reductions of an accepting computation for a word $w \in T$ yields a reverse rightmost derivation of $G$ for $w$
Attention:
Unfortunately, the $LR(0)$-parser is in general non-deterministic.

We identify two reasons:

**Reduce-Reduce-Conflict:**

\[ A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet \]
\[ A' \rightarrow \gamma' \bullet \]

with \( A \neq A' \lor \gamma \neq \gamma' \)

**Shift-Reduce-Conflict:**

\[ A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet \]
\[ A' \rightarrow \alpha \bullet a \beta \]

with \( a \in T \)

for a state \( q \in Q \).
Revisiting the Conflicts of the LR(0)-Automaton

What differentiates the particular Reductions and Shifts?

Input: 
\[ * 2 + 40 \]

Pushdown: 
\[ ( q_0 \ T ) \]

### Grammar Rules

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow ( E ) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
What differentiates the particular Reductions and Shifts?

Input:

+ 40

Pushdown:

(q₀ T )

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T & | & T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F & | & F \\
F & \rightarrow ( E ) & | & \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Revisiting the Conflicts of the LR(0)-Automaton

**Idea:** Matching lookahead with *right context* matters!

**Input:**

\[ (*)2 + 40 \]

**Pushdown:**

\[ ( q_0 T ) \]

**Production Rules:**

- \[ E \rightarrow E + T \] | \[ T \]
- \[ T \rightarrow T * F \] | \[ F \]
- \[ F \rightarrow ( E ) \] | \[ \text{int} \]
Revisiting the Conflicts of the LR(0)-Automaton

Idea: Matching lookahead with *right context* matters!

Input: 

\[ + 40 \]

Pushdown: 

\[ ( q_0, T ) \]

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F \\
F & \rightarrow ( E ) \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow E + T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F \\
F & \rightarrow ( E ) \\
\end{align*}
\]

name
LR(k)-Grammars

Idea: Consider $k$-lookahead in conflict situations.

Definition:

The reduced contextfree grammar $G$ is called $LR(k)$-grammar, if for $\text{First}_{|\alpha\beta|+k}(\alpha\beta w) = \text{First}_{|\alpha\beta|+k}(\alpha'\beta' w')$ with:

$$
\begin{align*}
S & \xrightarrow{R}^* \alpha Aw \quad \rightarrow \quad \alpha\beta w \\
S & \xrightarrow{R}^* \alpha' A' w' \quad \rightarrow \quad \alpha'\beta' w'
\end{align*}
$$

follows: $\alpha = \alpha' \land \beta = \beta' \land A = A'$
LR(k)-Grammars

**Idea:** Consider $k$-lookahead in conflict situations.

**Definition:**

The reduced contextfree grammar $G$ is called $LR(k)$-grammar, if for

$\text{First}_{|\alpha\beta|+k}(\alpha \beta w) = \text{First}_{|\alpha\beta|+k}(\alpha' \beta' w')$ with:

$S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha A w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w$

$S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha' A' w' \rightarrow \alpha' \beta' w'$

follows: $\alpha = \alpha' \land \beta = \beta' \land A = A'$

**Strategy** for testing Grammars for $LR(k)$-property

1. Focus iteratively on all rightmost derivations $S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w$
2. Iterate over $k \geq 0$
   1. For each $\gamma = \text{First}_{|\alpha\beta|+k}(\alpha \beta w)$ check if there exists a differently right-derivable $\alpha' \beta' w'$ for which $\gamma = \text{First}_{|\alpha\beta|+k}(\alpha' \beta' w')$
   2. if there is none, we have found no objection against $k$, being enough lookahead to disambiguate $\alpha \beta w$ from other rightmost derivations
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \[ S \rightarrow A \mid B \quad A \rightarrow aAb \mid 0 \quad B \rightarrow aBbb \mid 1 \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \[ S \rightarrow A \mid B \quad A \rightarrow a Ab \mid 0 \quad B \rightarrow a B b b \mid 1 \]

... is not \( LL(k) \) for any \( k \):

Let \( S \rightarrow^* \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \). Then \( \alpha \beta \) is of one of these forms:
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \( S \to A \mid B \quad A \to a Ab \mid 0 \quad B \to a B b b \mid 1 \)

... is not \( LL(k) \) for any \( k \):

Let \( S \to R^* \alpha X w \to \alpha \beta w \). Then \( \alpha \beta \) is of one of these forms:

\[ A, B, a^n a Ab, a^n a B b b, a^n 0, a^n 1 \quad (n \geq 0) \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \[ S \rightarrow A \mid B \quad A \rightarrow aAb \mid 0 \quad B \rightarrow aBbb \mid 1 \]

... is not LL(k) for any k — but LR(0):

Let \[ S \rightarrow^{*} R \quad \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \]. Then \( \alpha \beta \) is of one of these forms:

\[ A, B, a^n aAb, a^n aBbb, a^n 0, a^n 1 \quad (n \geq 0) \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1)  \[ S \rightarrow A \mid B \quad A \rightarrow aAb \mid 0 \quad B \rightarrow aBbb \mid 1 \]

... is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$ — but $LR(0)$:

Let \( S \rightarrow^* R \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \). Then \( \alpha \beta \) is of one of these forms:

\[ A, B, a^n aAb, a^n aBbb, a^n 0, a^n 1 \quad (n \geq 0) \]

(2)  \[ S \rightarrow aAc \quad A \rightarrow Abb \mid b \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \[ S \rightarrow A \mid B \quad A \rightarrow aAb \mid 0 \quad B \rightarrow aBbb \mid 1 \]

... is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$ — but $LR(0)$:

Let \[ S \rightarrow^* \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \]. Then $\alpha \beta$ is of one of these forms:

\[ A, B, a^n aAb, a^n aBbb, a^n 0, a^n 1 \quad (n \geq 0) \]

(2) \[ S \rightarrow aAc \quad A \rightarrow A bb \mid b \]

... is also not $LL(k)$ for any $k$:

Let \[ S \rightarrow^* \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \]. Then $\alpha \beta$ is of one of these forms:
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \[ S \rightarrow A \mid B \quad A \rightarrow a A b \mid 0 \quad B \rightarrow a B b b \mid 1 \]

... is not $LL(k)$ for any $k$ — but $LR(0)$:

Let \[ S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w . \] Then \[ \alpha \beta \] is of one of these forms:

\[ A , B , a^n a A b , a^n a B b b , a^n 0 , a^n 1 \quad (n \geq 0) \]

(2) \[ S \rightarrow a A c \quad A \rightarrow A b b \mid b \]

... is also not $LL(k)$ for any $k$:

Let \[ S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w . \] Then \[ \alpha \beta \] is of one of these forms:

\[ a b , a A b b , a A c \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(1) \[ \begin{align*} S & \to A \mid B \quad A \to a\,Ab \mid 0 \quad B \to a\,B\,b\,b \mid 1 \end{align*} \]
...
... is not \( LL(k) \) for any \( k \) — but \( LR(0) \):

Let \( S \to^* R \alpha\,X\,w \to \alpha\beta\,w \). Then \( \alpha\beta \) is of one of these forms:

\[ A, B, a^n\,a\,Ab, a^n\,a\,B\,b\,b, a^n\,0, a^n\,1 \quad (n \geq 0) \]

(2) \[ \begin{align*} S & \to a\,A\,c \quad A \to A\,b\,b \mid b \end{align*} \]
...
... is also not \( LL(k) \) for any \( k \) — but again \( LR(0) \):

Let \( S \to^* R \alpha\,X\,w \to \alpha\beta\,w \). Then \( \alpha\beta \) is of one of these forms:

\[ ab, a\,Ab\,b, a\,A\,c \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

\[(3) \quad S \rightarrow a \ A \ c \quad A \rightarrow b\ b\ A \mid b\]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(3) \[ S \rightarrow a \ A \ c \quad A \rightarrow b \ b \ A \mid b \]

Let \[ S \rightarrow^* R \quad \alpha X \ w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \quad \text{with} \quad \{y\} = \text{First}_k(w) \quad \text{then} \]
\[ \alpha \beta y \quad \text{is of one of these forms:} \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(3) \[ S \rightarrow a A c \quad A \rightarrow b b A \mid b \]

Let \[ S \rightarrow^{*} R \quad \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \quad \text{with} \quad \{y\} = \text{First}_k(w) \quad \text{then} \]
\[ \alpha \beta y \quad \text{is of one of these forms:} \]

\[ a b^{2n} b c, \ a b^{2n} b b A c, \ a A c \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

\[(3) \quad S \rightarrow a \ A \ c \quad A \rightarrow b \ b \ A \ | \ b \quad \ldots \text{ is not } LR(0), \text{ but } LR(1): \]

Let \( S \rightarrow^* \alpha \ X \ w \rightarrow \alpha \ \beta \ w \) with \( \{y\} = \text{First}_k(w) \) then \( \alpha \ \beta \ y \) is of one of these forms:

\[a \ b^{2n} \ b \ c, \ a \ b^{2n} \ b \ b \ A \ c, \ a \ A \ c\]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(3) \[ S \rightarrow aA \epsilon \quad A \rightarrow bbA \mid b \quad \text{... is not LR(0), but LR(1)}: \]

Let \[ S \rightarrow^* \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \quad \text{with} \quad \{y\} = \text{First}_k(w) \quad \text{then} \]
\[ \alpha \beta y \quad \text{is of one of these forms:} \]

\[ ab^{2n} bc , \quad a b^{2n} bbA c , \quad aA c \]

(4) \[ S \rightarrow aA \epsilon \quad A \rightarrow bA b \mid b \]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(3) \[ S \rightarrow a A c \quad A \rightarrow b b A \mid b \] ... is not LR(0), but LR(1):

Let \[ S \rightarrow^* \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \] with \( \{y\} = \text{First}_k(w) \) then \( \alpha \beta y \) is of one of these forms:

\[
a b^{2n} b c, \quad a b^{2n} b b A c, \quad a A c
\]

(4) \[ S \rightarrow a A c \quad A \rightarrow b A b \mid b \]

Consider the rightmost derivations:

\[
S \rightarrow^*_R a b^n A b^n c \rightarrow a b^n b b^n c
\]
LR(k)-Grammars

for example:

(3) \( S \rightarrow a A c \quad A \rightarrow b b A \mid b \) ... is not LR(0), but LR(1):

Let \( S \rightarrow^* \alpha X w \rightarrow \alpha \beta w \) with \( \{y\} = \text{First}_k(w) \) then \( \alpha \beta y \) is of one of these forms:

\[
\begin{align*}
ab^{2n}bc, \quad a b^{2n}b b A c, \quad a A c
\end{align*}
\]

(4) \( S \rightarrow a A c \quad A \rightarrow b A b \mid b \) ... is not LR(\(k\)) for any \(k \geq 0\):

Consider the rightmost derivations:

\[
S \rightarrow^*_R a b^n A b^n c \rightarrow a b^n b b^n c
\]
Idea: Let’s equip items with 1-lookahead

**Definition LR(1)-Item**

An $LR(1)$-item is a pair $[B \rightarrow \alpha \cdot \beta, x]$ with

$$x \in \text{Follow}_1(B) = \bigcup \{ \text{First}_1(\nu) \mid S \rightarrow^* \mu B \nu \}$$
Admissible LR(1)-Items

The $LR(1)$-Item $[B \rightarrow \gamma \bullet \beta, x]$ is **admissible** for $\alpha \gamma$ if:

$$S \rightarrow^*_R \alpha B w \quad \text{with} \quad \{x\} = \text{First}_1(w)$$

[Diagram showing a derivation tree with nodes labeled as follows: $S$ at the root labels $i_0$, $\alpha_0$, $A_1$ at $i_1$, $\alpha_1$, $A_m$ at $i_m$, $\alpha_m$, $B$ at $i$, $\gamma$, $\beta$, $x$, $w$. The tree structure indicates the derivation process $S \rightarrow \alpha_0 \cdots \alpha_m B \rightarrow \gamma \beta x w$ with $\alpha_0 \cdots \alpha_m = \alpha$.]

... with $\alpha_0 \cdots \alpha_m = \alpha$
The Characteristic LR(1)-Automaton

The set of admissible $LR(1)$-items for viable prefixes is again computed with the help of the finite automaton $c(G, 1)$.

The automaton $c(G, 1)$:

States: $LR(1)$-items

Start state: $[S' \rightarrow \bullet S, \$]$

Final states: $\{[B \rightarrow \gamma\bullet, x] \mid B \rightarrow \gamma \in P, x \in \text{Follow}_{1}(B)\}$

Transitions:

1. $([A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet X \beta, x], X, [A \rightarrow \alpha X \bullet \beta, x]), \quad X \in (N \cup T)$
2. $([A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta, x], \epsilon, [B \rightarrow \bullet \gamma, x']),$
   $A \rightarrow \alpha B \beta, \quad B \rightarrow \gamma \in P,$
   $x' \in \text{First}_{1}(\beta) \odot_{1} \{x\}$
The Characteristic LR(1)-Automaton

The set of admissible $LR(1)$-items for viable prefixes is again computed with the help of the finite automaton $c(G, 1)$.

The automaton $c(G, 1)$:

States: $LR(1)$-items

Start state: $[S' \rightarrow \bullet S, \$$$

Final states: $\{[B \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, x] \mid B \rightarrow \gamma \in P, x \in \text{Follow}_1(B)\}$

Transitions:

1. $([A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet X \beta, x], X, [A \rightarrow \alpha X \bullet \beta, x]), \quad X \in (N \cup T)$
2. $([A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta, x], \epsilon, [B \rightarrow \bullet \gamma, x']), \quad A \rightarrow \alpha \beta, B \rightarrow \gamma \in P,$
   $x' \in \text{First}_1(\beta) \odot_1 \{x\}$

This automaton works like $c(G)$ — but additionally manages a $1$-prefix from $\text{Follow}_1$ of the left-hand sides.
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

The canonical $LR(1)$-automaton $LR(G, 1)$ is created from $c(G, 1)$, by performing arbitrarily many $\epsilon$-transitions and then making the resulting automaton deterministic ...
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

The canonical $LR(1)$-automaton $LR(G, 1)$ is created from $c(G, 1)$, by performing arbitrarily many $\epsilon$-transitions and then making the resulting automaton deterministic ...

But again, it can be constructed directly from the grammar; analoguously to $LR(0)$, we need the $\epsilon$-closure $\delta^*_\epsilon$ as a helper function:

$$\delta^*_\epsilon(q) = q \cup \{ [C \rightarrow \bullet \gamma, x] \mid \begin{array}{l} C \rightarrow \gamma \in P, \\ [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta', x'] \in q, \\ B \rightarrow^* C \beta', \\ x \in \text{First}_1(\beta \beta') \odot_1 \{x'\} \}$$
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

The canonical $LR(1)$-automaton $LR(G, 1)$ is created from $c(G, 1)$, by performing arbitrarily many $\epsilon$-transitions and then making the resulting automaton deterministic ...

But again, it can be constructed directly from the grammar; analogously to $LR(0)$, we need the $\epsilon$-closure $\delta_\epsilon^*$ as a helper function:

$$\delta_\epsilon^*(q) = q \cup \{ [C \rightarrow \bullet \gamma, x] \mid C \rightarrow \gamma \in P, [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet B \beta', x'] \in q, B \rightarrow^* C \beta, x \in \text{First}_1(\beta \beta') \odot_1 \{ x' \} \}$$

Then, we define:

**States:** Sets of $LR(1)$-items;

**Start state:** $\delta_\epsilon^* \{ [S' \rightarrow \bullet S, \$] \}$

**Final states:** $\{ q \mid [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet, x] \in q \}$

**Transitions:** $\delta(q, X) = \delta_\epsilon^* \{ [A \rightarrow \alpha X \bullet \beta, x] \mid [A \rightarrow \alpha \bullet X \beta, x] \in q \}$
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[ S' \rightarrow E \]
\[ E \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \]
\[ T \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \]
\[ F \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int} \]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
egin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \\
T & \rightarrow T * F \quad | \quad F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[ S' \rightarrow E \]
\[ E \rightarrow E + T \quad | \quad T \]
\[ T \rightarrow T \ast F \quad | \quad F \]
\[ F \rightarrow (E) \quad | \quad \text{int} \]
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T \mid T \\
T & \rightarrow T \ast F \mid F \\
F & \rightarrow (E) \mid \text{int}
\end{align*}
\]
Discussion:

- In the example, the number of states was almost doubled... and it can become even worse.

- The conflicts in states $q_1, q_2, q_9$ are now resolved! e.g. we have:

  \[ E \rightarrow E + T \bullet \{\$, +\} \]
  \[ T \rightarrow T \bullet * F \{\$, +, *\} \]

with:

\[ \{\$, +\} \cap (\text{First}_1(* F) \odot_1 \{\$, +, *\}) = \{\$, +\} \cap \{*\} = \emptyset \]
The Action Table:

During practical parsing, we want to represent states just via an integer id. However, when the canonical $LR(1)$-automaton reaches a final state, we want to know how to reduce/shift. Thus we introduce...

The construction of the action table:

**Type:** $\text{action} : Q \times T \rightarrow LR(0)\text{-Items} \cup \{s, \text{error}\}$

**Reduce:** $\text{action}[q, w] = [A \rightarrow \beta \bullet]$ \hspace{2cm} if $[A \rightarrow \beta \bullet, w] \in q$

**Shift:** $\text{action}[q, w] = s$ \hspace{2cm} if $[A \rightarrow \beta \bullet b\gamma, a] \in q, w \in \text{First}_1(b\gamma) \oplus_1 \{a\}$

**Error:** $\text{action}[q, w] = \text{error}$ \hspace{2cm} else
The LR(1)-Parser:

- The goto-table encodes the transitions:
  \[ \text{goto}[q, X] = \delta(q, X) \in Q \]

- The action-table describes for every state \( q \) and possible lookahead \( w \) the necessary action.
The LR(1)-Parser:

The construction of the $LR(1)$-parser:

States: $Q \cup \{f\}$  
(f fresh)
Start state: $q_0$
Final state: $f$

Transitions:

Shift: 
$(p, a, pq)$  
if $a = w$,  
$s = \text{action}[p, a]$,  
$q = \text{goto}[p, a]$

Reduce:  
$(pq_1 \ldots q_{|\beta|}, \epsilon, pq)$  
if $q_{|\beta|} \in F$,  
$[A \rightarrow \beta \bullet] = \text{action}[q_{|\beta|}, w]$,  
$q = \text{goto}[p, A]$

Finish: 
$(q_0 p, \epsilon, f)$  
if $[S' \rightarrow S\bullet, \$] \in p$

with $LR(G, 1) = (Q, T, \delta, q_0, F)$ and the lookahead $w$. 
The LR(1)-Parser:

Possible actions are:

- **shift**  // Shift-operation
- **reduce** \((A \rightarrow \gamma)\)  // Reduction with callback/output
- **error**  // Error

... for example:

\[
egin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E \\
E & \rightarrow E + T^0 | T^1 \\
T & \rightarrow T * F^0 | F^1 \\
F & \rightarrow (E)^0 | \text{int}^1
\end{align*}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>action</th>
<th>$$</th>
<th>\text{int}</th>
<th>( )</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$q_1$</td>
<td>$S', 0$</td>
<td>\text{s}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_2$</td>
<td>$E, 1$</td>
<td>$E, 1$</td>
<td>\text{s}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q'_2$</td>
<td>$E, 1$</td>
<td>$E, 1$</td>
<td>\text{s}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_3$</td>
<td>$T, 1$</td>
<td>$T, 1$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q'_3$</td>
<td>$T, 1$</td>
<td>$T, 1$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_4$</td>
<td>$F, 1$</td>
<td>$F, 1$</td>
<td>$F, 1$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q'_4$</td>
<td>$E, 0$</td>
<td>$E, 0$</td>
<td>\text{s}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_9$</td>
<td>$E, 0$</td>
<td>$E, 0$</td>
<td>\text{s}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q'_9$</td>
<td>$T, 0$</td>
<td>$T, 0$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_{10}$</td>
<td>$T, 0$</td>
<td>$T, 0$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q'_{10}$</td>
<td>$T, 0$</td>
<td>$T, 0$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_{11}$</td>
<td>$F, 0$</td>
<td>$F, 0$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q'_{11}$</td>
<td>$F, 0$</td>
<td>$F, 0$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

In general: We identify two conflicts:

Reduce-Reduce-Conflict:

\[ q \]

\[
A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, x \\
A' \rightarrow \gamma' \bullet, x
\]

with \( A \neq A' \lor \gamma \neq \gamma' \)

Shift-Reduce-Conflict:

\[ q \]

\[
A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, x \\
A' \rightarrow \alpha' \bullet a \beta, y
\]

with \( a \in T \) und \( x \in \{a\} \).

for a state \( q \in Q \).

Such states are now called \( LR(1) \)-unsuited
The Canonical LR(1)-Automaton

In general: We identify two conflicts:

**Reduce-Reduce-Conflict:**

\[ A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, x \]
\[ A' \rightarrow \gamma' \bullet, x \]

with \( A \neq A' \lor \gamma \neq \gamma' \)

**Shift-Reduce-Conflict:**

\[ A \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, x \]
\[ A' \rightarrow \alpha' \bullet a \beta, y \]

with \( a \in T \) und \( x \in \{a\} \odot_k \text{First}_k(\beta) \odot_k \{y\} \).

for a state \( q \in Q \).

Such states are now called \( LR(k)\)-unsuited

**Theorem:**

A reduced contextfree grammar \( G \) is called \( LR(k) \) iff the canonical \( LR(k)\)-automaton \( LR(G, k) \) has no \( LR(k)\)-unsuited states.
Many parser generators give the chance to fix Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts by patching the action table either by hand or with *token precedences*.

**... for example:**

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E^0 \\
E & \rightarrow E + E^0 \\
& | E \ast E^1 \\
& | (E)^2 \\
& | \text{int}^3
\end{align*}
\]
Precedences

Many parser generators give the chance to fix Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts by patching the action table either by hand or with *token precedences*.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E^0 \\
E & \rightarrow E + E^0 \\
& \quad | E \ast E^1 \\
& \quad | (E)^2 \\
& \quad | \text{int}^3
\end{align*}
\]

Shift-/Reduce Conflict in state 8:

\[
\begin{align*}
[E & \rightarrow E \ast + E^0 ] \\
[E & \rightarrow E + E^0 , + ]
\end{align*}
\]

\[<\gamma E + E, + \omega > \Rightarrow \text{Associativity}\]

| action | $\$ | int | ( ) | + | $\ast$
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$q_0$</td>
<td>$S', 0$</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_1$</td>
<td>$E, 3$</td>
<td>$E, 3$</td>
<td>$E, 3$</td>
<td>$E, 3$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_2$</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_3$</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_4$</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_5$</td>
<td>$E, 2$</td>
<td>$E, 2$</td>
<td>$E, 2$</td>
<td>$E, 2$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_6$</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_7$</td>
<td>$E, 1$</td>
<td>$E, 1$</td>
<td>$? \quad ?$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_8$</td>
<td>$E, 0$</td>
<td>$E, 0$</td>
<td>$? \quad ?$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$q_9$</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Many parser generators give the chance to fix Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts by patching the action table either by hand or with token precedences.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' &\rightarrow E^0 \\
E &\rightarrow E + E^0 \\
| &\rightarrow E \ast E^1 \\
| &\rightarrow ( E )^2 \\
| &\rightarrow \text{int}^3
\end{align*}
\]

Shift-/Reduce Conflict in state 8:

\[
\begin{align*}
[ E &\rightarrow E \ast + E^0 ] \\
[ E &\rightarrow E + E \ast^0 , + ]
\end{align*}
\]

\(< \gamma E + E , + \omega > \Rightarrow \text{Associativity}\)

+ left associative
Many parser generators give the chance to fix Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts by patching the action table either by hand or with token precedences.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E^0 \\
E & \rightarrow E + E^0 \\
& \quad | E \ast E^1 \\
& \quad | (E)^2 \\
& \quad | \text{int}^3
\end{align*}
\]

Shift-/Reduce Conflict in state 7:

\[
\begin{align*}
[E & \rightarrow E \ast * E^1 ] \\
[E & \rightarrow E\ast E \ast^1 , * ]
\end{align*}
\]

\[\gamma E \ast E , * \omega \Rightarrow \text{Associativity}\]

* right associative
Many parser generators give the chance to fix Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts by patching the action table either by hand or with token precedences.

... for example:

\[
S' \rightarrow E^0 \\
E \rightarrow E + E^0 \\
| \quad E \times E^1 \\
| \quad ( E )^2 \\
| \quad \text{int}^3
\]

Shift-/Reduce Conflict in states 8, 7:

\[
[E \rightarrow E \times E^1] \\
[E \rightarrow E + E^0, *] \\
< \gamma E, + \omega > \\
[E \rightarrow E \times E^1] \\
[E \rightarrow E + E^0, *]
\]

\[
< \gamma E + E, * \omega >
\]
Precedences

Many parser generators give the chance to fix Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts by patching the action table either by hand or with *token precedences*.

... for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S' & \rightarrow E^0 \\
E & \rightarrow E + E^0 \\
& \quad | \quad E \ast E^1 \\
& \quad | \quad (E)^2 \\
& \quad | \quad \text{int}^3
\end{align*}
\]

Shift-/Reduce Conflict in states 8, 7:

\[
\begin{align*}
[E & \rightarrow E \ast * E^1 ] \\
[E & \rightarrow E + E \ast 0 ]
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
< \gamma E \ast E , + \omega > \\
[E & \rightarrow E \ast + E^0 ] \\
[E & \rightarrow E \ast E \ast 1 ] , + \\

< \gamma E + E , * \omega >
\end{align*}
\]

* higher precedence

+ lower precedence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>action</th>
<th>$</th>
<th>\text{int}</th>
<th>( )</th>
<th>+</th>
<th>*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>q0</td>
<td>\text{S}', 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q1</td>
<td>E, 3</td>
<td>E, 3</td>
<td>E, 3</td>
<td>E, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q2</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q3</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q4</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q5</td>
<td>E, 2</td>
<td>E, 2</td>
<td>E, 2</td>
<td>E, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q6</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q7</td>
<td>E, 1</td>
<td>E, 1</td>
<td>E, 1</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q8</td>
<td>E, 0</td>
<td>E, 0</td>
<td>E, 0</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q9</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What if precedences are not enough?

Example (very simplified lambda expressions):

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow (E)^0 | \text{ident}^1 | L^2 \\
L & \rightarrow \langle\text{args}\rangle \Rightarrow E^0 \\
\langle\text{args}\rangle & \rightarrow (\langle\text{idlist}\rangle)^0 | \text{ident}^1 \\
\langle\text{idlist}\rangle & \rightarrow \langle\text{idlist}\rangle \text{ident}^0 | \text{ident}^1
\end{align*}
\]
What if precedences are not enough?

Example (very simplified lambda expressions):

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow (E)^0 \mid \text{ident}^1 \mid L^2 \\
L & \rightarrow \langle \text{args} \rangle \Rightarrow E^0 \\
\langle \text{args} \rangle & \rightarrow (\langle \text{idlist} \rangle)^0 \mid \text{ident}^1 \\
\langle \text{idlist} \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \text{idlist} \rangle \text{ident}^0 \mid \text{ident}^1 \\
\end{align*}
\]

\( E \) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\[
(\text{ident}), (\text{ident}) \Rightarrow \text{ident}, \ldots \Rightarrow \text{at least LR(2)}
\]

Naive Idea:
poor man’s LR(2) by combining the tokens and \( \Rightarrow \) during lexical analysis into a single token \( \Rightarrow \).
What if precedences are not enough?

Example (very simplified lambda expressions):

\[
\begin{align*}
E & \rightarrow (E)^0 \mid \text{ident}^1 \mid L^2 \\
L & \rightarrow \langle \text{args} \rangle \Rightarrow E^0 \\
\langle \text{args} \rangle & \rightarrow (\langle \text{idlist} \rangle)^0 \mid \text{ident}^1 \\
\langle \text{idlist} \rangle & \rightarrow \langle \text{idlist} \rangle \text{ident}^0 \mid \text{ident}^1
\end{align*}
\]

\(E\) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\((\text{ident}), (\text{ident}) \Rightarrow \text{ident}, \ldots \Rightarrow \) at least \(LR(2)\)

Naive Idea:

poor man’s \(LR(2)\) by combining the tokens \(\) and \(\Rightarrow\) during lexical analysis into a single token \(\Rightarrow\).

⚠️ in this case obvious solution, but in general not so simple
What if precedences are not enough?

In practice, $LR(k)$-parser generators working with the lookahead sets of sizes larger than $k = 1$ are not common, since computing lookahead sets with $k > 1$ blows up exponentially. However,

1. there exist several practical $LR(k)$ grammars of $k > 1$, e.g. Java 1.6+ ($LR(2)$), ANSI C, etc.

2. often, more lookahead is only exhausted locally

3. should we really give up, whenever we are confronted with a Shift-/Reduce-Conflict?
What if precedences are not enough?

In practice, $LR(k)$-parser generators working with the lookahead sets of sizes larger then $k = 1$ are not common, since computing lookahead sets with $k > 1$ blows up exponentially. However,

1. there exist several practical $LR(k)$ grammars of $k > 1$, e.g. Java 1.6+ ($LR(2)$), ANSI C, etc.
2. often, more lookahead is only exhausted locally
3. should we really give up, whenever we are confronted with a Shift-/Reduce-Conflict?

Theorem: $LR(k)$-to-$LR(1)$

Any $LR(k)$ grammar can be directly transformed into an equivalent $LR(1)$ grammar.
... Example:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow Abb^0 | Bbc^1 \\
A & \rightarrow aA^0 | a^1 \\
B & \rightarrow aB^0 | a^1
\end{align*}
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

... Example:

\[ S \rightarrow A b b^0 \mid B b c^1 \]
\[ A \rightarrow a A^0 \mid a^1 \]
\[ B \rightarrow a B^0 \mid a^1 \]

\( S \) rightmost-derives one of these forms:

\[ a^n a b b^0 , a^n a b c , a^n a A b b , a^n a B b c , A b b , B b b \Rightarrow LR(2) \]

in \( LR(1) \), you will have Reduce-/Reduce-Conflicts between the productions \( A \), \( 1 \) and \( B \), \( 1 \) under lookahead \( b \)
LR(2) to LR(1)

Basic Idea:

\[ S \rightarrow A b b^0 \mid B b c^1 \]

\[ A \rightarrow a A^0 \mid a^1 \]

\[ B \rightarrow a B^0 \mid a^1 \]

in the example:
Right-context is already extracted, so we only perform
Right-context-propagation:
LR(2) to LR(1)

Basic Idea:

\[ S \rightarrow \gamma_0 \quad A_1 \rightarrow \gamma_1 \quad A_m \rightarrow \gamma_m \quad B \rightarrow \beta \quad \alpha \quad \beta \quad x \quad y \quad \omega \]

\[ \Rightarrow \]

Right-context-extraction

\[ S \rightarrow \gamma_0 \quad A_1 \rightarrow \gamma_1 \quad A_m \rightarrow \gamma_m \quad B \rightarrow \beta \quad \alpha \quad \beta \quad x \quad y \quad \omega \]

\[ \Rightarrow \]

Right-context-propagation

\[ S \rightarrow \gamma_0 \quad A_1 \rightarrow \gamma_1 \quad A_m \rightarrow \gamma_m \quad B \rightarrow \beta \quad \alpha \quad \beta \quad x \quad y \quad \omega \]

in the example:

Right-context is already extracted, so we only perform

Right-context-propagation:

\[ S \rightarrow \langle Ab \rangle b^0 | \langle B b \rangle c^1 \]

\[ S \rightarrow Ab b^0 | B b c^1 \]

\[ A \rightarrow aA^0 | a^1 \]

\[ B \rightarrow aB^0 | a^1 \]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Basic Idea:

\[ S_{i_0} \]
\[ A_{m_i m} \]
\[ B_{i \gamma} \]
\[ \alpha \beta \]

\[ \gamma_0 \]
\[ \gamma_1 \]
\[ \gamma_m \]

\[ x \omega \]

⇒

Right-context-extraction

⇒

Right-context-propagation

⇒

⇒

⇒

⇒

in the example:

Right-context is already extracted, so we only perform Right-context-propagation:

\[ S \rightarrow A b b^0 | B b c^1 \]
\[ A \rightarrow a A^0 | a^1 \]
\[ B \rightarrow a B^0 | a^1 \]

\[ \langle A b \rangle \rightarrow a \langle A b \rangle^0 | a b^1 \]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Basic Idea:

$S_{i_0} \Rightarrow A_{i_1}$

$A_{i_1} \Rightarrow A_{m, i_m}$

$B_{i_1} \gamma_{1, i_1}$

$\gamma_{m, i_m}$

$\alpha \beta \gamma \omega$

$\Rightarrow$

Right-context-extraction

$S_{i_0} \Rightarrow A_{i_1}$

$A_{i_1} \Rightarrow A_{m, i_m}$

$B_{i_1} \gamma_{1, i_1}$

$\gamma_{m, i_m}$

$\alpha \beta \gamma \omega$

$\Rightarrow$

Right-context-propagation

$S_{i_0} \Rightarrow A_{i_1}$

$A_{i_1} \Rightarrow A_{m, i_m}$

$B_{i_1} \gamma_{1, i_1}$

$\gamma_{m, i_m}$

$\alpha \beta \gamma \omega$

$\Rightarrow$

Right-context-extraction

$S_{i_0} \Rightarrow A_{i_1}$

$A_{i_1} \Rightarrow A_{m, i_m}$

$B_{i_1} \gamma_{1, i_1}$

$\gamma_{m, i_m}$

$\alpha \beta \gamma \omega$

$\Rightarrow$

Right-context-propagation

in the example:

Right-context is already extracted, so we only perform

Right-context-propagation:

$S \rightarrow Abb^0 | Bb c^1$

$A \rightarrow aA^0 | a^1$

$B \rightarrow aB^0 | a^1$

$\Rightarrow$

$S \rightarrow \langle Ab \rangle b^0 | \langle Bb \rangle c^1$

$\langle Ab \rangle \rightarrow a \langle Ab \rangle^0 | a^1$

$\langle Bb \rangle \rightarrow a \langle Bb \rangle^0 | a^1$
LR(2) to LR(1)

Basic Idea:

\[
\begin{align*}
S &\rightarrow Ab b^0 | B b c^1 \\
A &\rightarrow a A^0 | a^1 \\
B &\rightarrow a B^0 | a^1
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\Rightarrow
\begin{align*}
S &\rightarrow \langle Ab \rangle b^0 | \langle B b \rangle c^1 \\
\langle Ab \rangle &\rightarrow a \langle Ab \rangle^0 | a b^1 \\
\langle B b \rangle &\rightarrow a \langle B b \rangle^0 | a b^1 \\
A &\rightarrow a A^0 | a^1 \\
B &\rightarrow a B^0 | a^1
\end{align*}
\]

in the example:
Right-context is already extracted, so we only perform

Right-context-propagation:
LR(2) to LR(1)

Basic Idea:

in the example:
Right-context is already extracted, so we only perform
Right-context-propagation:

\[
S \rightarrow Abb^0 | Bbc^1 \\
A \rightarrow aA^0 | a^1 \\
B \rightarrow aB^0 | a^1
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example cont’d:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow A' b^0 | B' c^1 \\
A' & \rightarrow a A' b^0 | a b^1 \\
B' & \rightarrow a B' b^0 | a b^1
\end{align*}
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example cont’d:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow A' b^0 \mid B' c^1 \\
A' & \rightarrow a A'^0 \mid a b^1 \\
B' & \rightarrow a B'^0 \mid a b^1
\end{align*}
\]

S rightmost-derives one of these forms:

\[
a^n a b b , a^n a b c , a^n a A' b , a^n a B' c , A' b , B' c \quad \Rightarrow \quad LR(1)
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2:

\[ S \rightarrow b S S^0 \]
\[ \quad \left| \begin{array}{l} a^1 \\mid \\quad \\mid \quad a a c^2 \end{array} \right. \]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2:

\[ S \rightarrow b S S^0 \]
\[ \quad | \quad a^1 \]
\[ \quad | \quad a a c^2 \]

\( S \) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\[ b S S, b S a, b S a a c, b a a, b a a c a, b a a a c, b a a c a a c, \ldots \Rightarrow \min. \ LR(2) \]

in \( LR(1) \), you will have (at least) Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts between the items \([ S \rightarrow a \bullet, a ]\) and \([ S \rightarrow a \bullet ac ]\)

\([ S \rightarrow a ]\)'s right context is a nonterminal \( \Rightarrow \) perform \textit{Right-context-extraction}

\[ S \rightarrow b S S^0 \]
\[ \quad | \quad a^1 \]
\[ \quad | \quad a a c^2 \]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2:

\[ S \rightarrow b \, S \, S^0 \]
\[ \quad \mid a^1 \]
\[ \quad \mid a \, a \, c^2 \]

\( S \) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\[ b \, S \, S, \, b \, S \, a, \, b \, S \, a \, a \, c, \, b \, a \, a, \, b \, a \, a \, c, \, b \, a \, a \, c \, a \, a \, c, \, \ldots \implies \text{min. } LR(2) \]

in \( LR(1) \), you will have (at least) Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts between the items

\[ [ S \rightarrow a \bullet, \, a ] \text{ and } [ S \rightarrow a \bullet \, a \, c ] \]

\( [ S \rightarrow a ] \)'s right context is a nonterminal \( \implies \) perform \textit{Right-context-extraction}

\[ S \rightarrow b \, S \, S^0 \]
\[ \quad \mid a^1 \]
\[ \quad \mid a \, a \, c^2 \]

\[ S \rightarrow b \, S \, a \, \langle a / S \rangle^0 \mid b \, S \, b \, \langle b / S \rangle^0' \]
\[ \quad \mid a^1 \mid a \, a \, c^2 \]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2:

\[
S \rightarrow b S S^0 \\
| \quad a^1 \\
| \quad a a c^2
\]

\(S\) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\[b S S, b S a, b S a a c, b a a, b a a c a, b a a a c, b a a c a a c, \ldots \Rightarrow \text{min. } LR(2)\]

in \(LR(1)\), you will have (at least) Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts between the items \([S \rightarrow a \bullet, a]\) and \([S \rightarrow a \bullet ac]\)

\([S \rightarrow a]\)'s right context is a nonterminal \(\Rightarrow\) perform \textit{Right-context-extraction}

\[
S \rightarrow b S S^0 \\
| \quad a^1 \\
| \quad a a c^2
\]

\[
\langle a/S \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \mid a c^1
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow b S S^0 \\
& \quad \mid a^1 \\
& \quad \mid a a c^2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

\(S\) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\[
\begin{align*}
b S S, b S a, b S a a c, b a a, b a a c a, b a a a c, b a a c a a c, \ldots \Rightarrow \text{min. } LR(2)
\end{align*}
\]

in \(LR(1)\), you will have (at least) Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts between the items \([S \rightarrow a \bullet, a]\) and \([S \rightarrow a \bullet ac]\)

\([S \rightarrow a]\)’s right context is a nonterminal ⇒ perform \textit{Right-context-extraction}

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow b S S^0 \\
& \quad \mid a^1 \\
& \quad \mid a a c^2 \\
\Rightarrow \\
S & \rightarrow b S a \langle a/S \rangle^0 | b S b \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
& \quad \mid a^1 | a a c^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon^0 | a c^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle & \rightarrow S S^0
\end{align*}
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2:

\[ S \rightarrow b S S^0 \]
\[ \quad \rightarrow a^1 \]
\[ \quad \rightarrow a a c^2 \]

\( S \) rightmost-derives these forms among others:

\[ b S S, b S a, b S a a c, b a a, b a a c a, b a a a c, b a a c a a c, \ldots \Rightarrow \min. \ \text{LR}(2) \]

in \( \text{LR}(1) \), you will have (at least) Shift-/Reduce-Conflicts between the items \([S \rightarrow a \bullet, a]\) and \([S \rightarrow a \bullet ac]\)

\([S \rightarrow a]\)’s right context is a nonterminal \(\Rightarrow\) perform \textit{Right-context-extraction}

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow b S S^0 \quad \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \rightarrow a^1 \quad \rightarrow a a c^2 \\
& \quad \rightarrow a a c^2
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow b S a \langle a/S \rangle^0 \quad \rightarrow b S b \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
& \quad \rightarrow a^1 \mid a a c^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \mid a c^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle & \rightarrow S a \langle a/S \rangle^0 \mid S b \langle b/S \rangle^0'
\end{align*}
\]
Example 2 cont’d:

\[ S \rightarrow a \]'s right context is now terminal \( a \) ⇒ perform \textit{Right-context-propagation}
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2 cont’d:

[ $S \rightarrow a$ ]’s right context is now terminal $a$ $\Rightarrow$ perform $Right$-$context$-$propagation$

$$
S \rightarrow b \ S \ a \ \langle a/\ S \rangle^0 \\
| \ 
| \ b \ S \ b \ \langle b/\ S \rangle^0' \\
| \ 
| \ a^1 \ | \ a \ a \ c^2 \\
\langle a/\ S \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \ | \ a \ c^1 \\
\langle b/\ S \rangle \rightarrow S \ a \ \langle a/\ S \rangle^0 \ | \ S \ b \ \langle b/\ S \rangle^0'
$$
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2 cont’d:
[S → a]’s right context is now terminal a ⇒ perform Right-context-propagation

\[
S \rightarrow b \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle^0
\]

\[
\begin{aligned}
S & \rightarrow b S a \langle a/S \rangle^0\\
& \quad \mid b S b \langle b/S \rangle^{0'}\\
& \quad \mid a^1 \mid a a c^2\\
\end{aligned}
\]

\[
\begin{aligned}
\langle a/S \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \mid a c^1\\
\langle b/S \rangle & \rightarrow S a \langle a/S \rangle^0 \mid S b \langle b/S \rangle^{0'}
\end{aligned}
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2 cont’d:
[S \rightarrow a]’s right context is now terminal $a \Rightarrow$ perform $\text{Right-context-propagation}$

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow b \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle^0 \\
& \quad \mid b S b \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
& \quad \mid a^1 | a a c^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon^0 | a c^1 \\
\langle Sa \rangle & \rightarrow b \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle a^0 \\
\langle b/S \rangle & \rightarrow S a \langle a/S \rangle^0 | S b \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
& \quad \mid b S b \langle b/S \rangle a^0' \\
& \quad \mid a a^1 | a a c a^2
\end{align*}
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Example 2 cont’d:

[S → a]’s right context is now terminal a ⇒ perform Right-context-propagation

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \rightarrow b \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle^0 \\
& \quad \mid b S b \langle b/S \rangle^{0'} \\
& \quad \mid a^1 \mid a a c^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle & \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \mid a c^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle & \rightarrow \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle^0 \mid S b \langle b/S \rangle^{0'} \\
\langle a/S \rangle a & \rightarrow a \mid a c a^1
\end{align*}
\]
Example 2 cont’d:

[S → a]’s right context is now terminal a ⇒ perform Right-context-propagation

\[
S \rightarrow b \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle^0 \\
\| \quad b S b \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
\| \quad a^1 \| a a c^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle \rightarrow \epsilon^0 \| a c^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle \rightarrow \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle^0 \| S b \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
\langle Sa \rangle \rightarrow b \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle a^0 \\
\| \quad b S b \langle b/S \rangle a^0' \\
\| \quad a a^1 \| a a c a^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle a \rightarrow a^0 \| a c a^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle a \rightarrow \langle Sa \rangle \langle a/S \rangle a^0 \| S b \langle b/S \rangle a^0'
\]
Example 2 cont’d:

[S→a]’s right context is now terminal a ⇒ perform Right-context-propagation

\[
S \quad \rightarrow \quad b \; \langle Sa \rangle \; \langle a/S \rangle^0 \\
| \quad b \; S \; b \; \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
| \quad a^1 \; | \; a \; a \; c^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \epsilon^0 \; | \; a \; c^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle Sa \rangle \; \langle a/S \rangle'^0 \; | \; b \; S \; b \; \langle b/S \rangle^0' \\
| \quad a^1 \; | \; a \; a \; c \; a^2 \\
\langle a/S \rangle a \quad \rightarrow \quad a^0 \; | \; a \; c \; a^1 \\
\langle b/S \rangle a \quad \rightarrow \quad \langle Sa \rangle \; \langle a/S \rangle a'^0 \; | \; b \; S \; \langle b/S \rangle a'^0 \\
| \quad a^1 \; | \; a \; a \; c \; a^2
\]
Example 2 finished:
With fresh nonterminals we get the final grammar:

\[
\begin{align*}
S & \to b S S^0 \\
& \quad | a^1 \\
& \quad | a a c^2 \\
\Rightarrow \\
S & \to b C A^0 | b S b B^1 | a^2 | a a c^3 \\
A & \to \epsilon^0 | a c^1 \\
B & \to C A^0 | S b B^1 \\
C & \to b C D^0 | b S b E^1 | a a^2 | a a c a^3 \\
D & \to a^0 | a c a^1 \\
E & \to C D^0 | S b E^1
\end{align*}
\]
LR(2) to LR(1)

Algorithm:

For a Rule $A \rightarrow \alpha$, which is \textit{reduce-conflicting} under terminal $x$

- $B \rightarrow \beta \ A$ is also considered \textit{reduce-conflicting} under terminal $x$
- $B \rightarrow \beta \ A \ C \ \gamma$ is transformed by \textit{right-context-extraction} on $C'$:

\[
B \rightarrow \beta \ A \ C \ \gamma \quad \Rightarrow \quad B \rightarrow \beta \ A \ x \ \langle x/C \rangle \ \gamma \quad \text{if } y \in \text{First}_1(C) \setminus x \quad \beta \ A \ y \ \langle y/C \rangle \ \gamma
\]

if $\epsilon \in \text{First}_1(C)$ then consider $B \rightarrow \beta \ A \ \gamma$ for r.-c.-extraction

- $B \rightarrow \beta \ A \ x \ \gamma$ is transformed by \textit{right-context-propagation} on $A$:

\[
B \rightarrow \beta \ A \ x \ \gamma \quad \Rightarrow \quad B \rightarrow \beta \ \langle Ax \rangle \ \gamma
\]

- The appropriate rules, created from introducing $\langle Ax \rangle \rightarrow \delta$ and $\langle x/B \rangle \rightarrow \eta$ are added to the grammar
LR(2) to LR(1)

Right-Context-Propagation Algorithm:

For \( \langle Ax \rangle \) with \( A \rightarrow \alpha_1 | \ldots | \alpha_k \), if \( \alpha_i \) matches

- \( \gamma A \) for some \( \gamma \in (N \cup T)^* \), then \( \langle Ax \rangle \rightarrow \gamma \langle Ax \rangle \) is added
- else \( \langle Ax \rangle \rightarrow \alpha_i x \) is added

Right-Context-Extraction Algorithm:

For \( \langle x/B \rangle \) with \( B \rightarrow \alpha_1 | \ldots | \alpha_k \), if \( \alpha_i \) matches

- \( C \gamma \) for some \( \gamma \in (N \cup T)^* \), then \( \langle x/B \rangle \rightarrow \langle x/C \rangle \gamma \) is added
- \( x \gamma \) for some \( \gamma \in (N \cup T)^* \), then \( \langle x/B \rangle \rightarrow \gamma \) is added
- \( y \gamma \) for some \( \gamma \in (N \cup T)^* \) and \( y \neq x \), then nothing is added
Chapter 5: Summary
Special LR(k)-Subclasses

Discussion:

- Our examples mostly were $LR(1)$ – or could be transformed to $LR(1)$
- In general, the canonical $LR(k)$-automaton has much more states then $LR(G) = LR(G, 0)$
- Therefore in practice, subclasses of $LR(k)$-grammars are often considered, which only use $LR(G)$ ...
Special LR(k)-Subclasses

Discussion:

- Our examples mostly were $LR(1)$ – or could be transformed to $LR(1)$
- In general, the canonical $LR(k)$-automaton has much more states than $LR(G) = LR(G, 0)$
- Therefore in practice, subclasses of $LR(k)$-grammars are often considered, which only use $LR(G)$ ...
- For resolving conflicts, the items are assigned special lookahead-sets:
  1. independently on the state itself $\implies$ Simple $LR(k)$
  2. dependent on the state itself $\implies$ LALR($k$)
Parsing Methods

deterministic languages

= LR(1) = ... = LR(k)

LALR(k)

SLR(k)

LR(0)

regular languages

LL(1)......LL(k)
 Parsing Methods

Discussion:

- All contextfree languages, that can be parsed with a deterministic pushdown automaton, can be characterized with an LR(1)-grammar.
- LR(0)-grammars describe all prefixfree deterministic contextfree languages.
- The language-classes of LL(k)-grammars form a hierarchy within the deterministic contextfree languages.
Lexical and Syntactical Analysis:

Concept of specification and implementation:

\[ 0 | [1-9][0-9]^* \]

\[ E \rightarrow E\{\text{op}\}E \]

Generator

[Diagram showing a recursive generation process]

[Diagram showing a state transition diagram]

[Diagram showing a finite state machine]
Lexical and Syntactical Analysis:

From Regular Expressions to Finite Automata

From Finite Automata to Scanners
Lexical and Syntactical Analysis:

Computation of lookahead sets:

\[
F_\epsilon(S') \supseteq F_\epsilon(E) \\
F_\epsilon(E) \supseteq F_\epsilon(T) \\
F_\epsilon(T) \supseteq F_\epsilon(F) \\
F_\epsilon(F) \supseteq \{(\_, \text{name}, \text{int})\}
\]

From Item-Pushdown Automata to LL(1)-Parsers:
Lexical and Syntactical Analysis:

From characteristic to canonical Automata:

From Shift-Reduce-Parsers to LR(1)-Parsers:
Topic:

Semantic Analysis
Semantic Analysis

Scanner and parser accept programs with correct syntax.

- not all programs that are syntactically correct make sense
Semantic Analysis

Scanner and parser accept programs with correct syntax.

- not all programs that are syntactically correct make *sense*
- the compiler may be able to *recognize* some of these
  - these programs are rejected and reported as *erroneous*
  - the language definition defines what *erroneous* means
Semantic Analysis

Scanner and parser accept programs with correct syntax.

- not all programs that are syntactically correct make *sense*
- the compiler may be able to *recognize* some of these
  - these programs are rejected and reported as *erroneous*
  - the language definition defines what *erroneous* means
- *semantic* analyses are necessary that, for instance:
  - check that *identifiers* are known and where they are defined
  - check the *type*-correct use of variables
Semantic Analysis

Scanner and parser accept programs with correct syntax.

- not all programs that are syntactically correct make sense
- the compiler may be able to recognize some of these
  - these programs are rejected and reported as erroneous
  - the language definition defines what erroneous means

- semantic analyses are necessary that, for instance:
  - check that identifiers are known and where they are defined
  - check the type-correct use of variables

- semantic analyses are also useful to
  - find possibilities to “optimize” the program
  - warn about possibly incorrect programs
Semantic Analysis

Scanner and parser accept programs with correct syntax.

- not all programs that are syntactically correct make sense
- the compiler may be able to recognize some of these
  - these programs are rejected and reported as erroneous
  - the language definition defines what erroneous means
- semantic analyses are necessary that, for instance:
  - check that identifiers are known and where they are defined
  - check the type-correct use of variables
- semantic analyses are also useful to
  - find possibilities to “optimize” the program
  - warn about possibly incorrect programs

→ a semantic analysis annotates the syntax tree with attributes
Chapter 1: Attribute Grammars
Attribute Grammars

- many computations of the semantic analysis as well as the code generation operate on the syntax tree
- what is computed at a given node only depends on the type of that node (which is usually a non-terminal)
- we call this a local computation:
  - only accesses already computed information from neighbouring nodes
  - computes new information for the current node and other neighbouring nodes
Attribute Grammars

- many computations of the semantic analysis as well as the code generation operate on the syntax tree
- what is computed at a given node only depends on the type of that node (which is usually a non-terminal)
- we call this a local computation:
  - only accesses already computed information from neighbouring nodes
  - computes new information for the current node and other neighbouring nodes

**Definition attribute grammar**

An attribute grammar is a CFG extended by
- a set of attributes for each non-terminal and terminal
- local attribute equations
Attribute Grammars

- many computations of the semantic analysis as well as the code generation operate on the syntax tree
- what is computed at a given node only depends on the *type* of that node (which is usually a non-terminal)
- we call this a *local* computation:
  - only accesses already computed information from neighbouring nodes
  - computes new information for the current node and other neighbouring nodes

**Definition attribute grammar**

An *attribute grammar* is a CFG extended by

- a set of attributes for each non-terminal and terminal
- local attribute equations

- in order to be able to evaluate the attribute equations, all attributes mentioned in that equation have to be evaluated already
- the nodes of the syntax tree need to be visited in a certain *sequence*
Example: Computation of the $\text{empty}^{[r]}$ Attribute

Consider the syntax tree of the regular expression $(a|b)^{*}a(a|b)$:
Example: Computation of the empty\([r]\) Attribute

Consider the syntax tree of the regular expression \((a\mid b)^*a(a\mid b):\)
Example: Computation of the empty\([r]\) Attribute

Consider the syntax tree of the regular expression \((a|b)^*a(a|b)\):
Example: Computation of the empty\textsuperscript{r} Attribute

Consider the syntax tree of the regular expression \((a|b)^*a(a|b)\):
Example: Computation of the $\text{empty}^{[r]}$ Attribute

Consider the syntax tree of the regular expression $(a|b)^*a(a|b)$:

$\leadsto$ equations for $\text{empty}^{[r]}$ are computed from bottom to top (aka bottom-up)
Implementation Strategy

- attach an attribute `empty` to every node of the syntax tree
- compute the attributes in a `depth-first post-order` traversal:
  - at a leaf, we can compute the value of `empty` without considering other nodes
  - the attribute of an inner node only depends on the attribute of its children
- the `empty` attribute is a `synthesized` attribute
- The local dependencies between the attributes are dependent on the type of the node
Implementation Strategy

- attach an attribute `empty` to every node of the syntax tree
- compute the attributes in a *depth-first post-order* traversal:
  - at a leaf, we can compute the value of `empty` without considering other nodes
  - the attribute of an inner node only depends on the attribute of its children
- the `empty` attribute is a *synthesized* attribute
- The local dependencies between the attributes are dependent on the *type* of the node

in general:

**Definition**

An attribute at $N$ is called

- *inherited* if its value is defined in terms of attributes of $N$’s parent, siblings and/or $N$ itself (root $\leftarrow$ leaves)
- *synthesized* if its value is defined in terms of attributes of $N$’s children and/or $N$ itself (leaves $\rightarrow$ root)
Attribute Equations for empty

In order to compute an attribute *locally*, we need to specify attribute equations for each node. These equations depend on the *type* of the node:

- **for leaves:** \( r \equiv \boxed{i \ x} \) we define \( \text{empty}[r] = (x \equiv \epsilon) \).
- **otherwise:**
  
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  \text{empty}[r_1 \mid r_2] &= \text{empty}[r_1] \lor \text{empty}[r_2] \\
  \text{empty}[r_1 \cdot r_2] &= \text{empty}[r_1] \land \text{empty}[r_2] \\
  \text{empty}[r_1^\ast] &= t \\
  \text{empty}[r_1?] &= t
  \end{align*}
  \]
In general, for establishing attribute systems we need a flexible way to refer to parents and children:

We use consecutive indices to refer to neighbouring attributes

\[
\text{attribute}_k[0] : \text{ the attribute of the current root node} \\
\text{attribute}_k[i] : \text{ the attribute of the } i\text{-th child} \quad (i > 0)
\]
In general, for establishing attribute systems we need a flexible way to refer to parents and children:

\[ \text{We use consecutive indices to refer to neighbouring attributes} \]

- \( \text{attribute}_k[0] \): the attribute of the current root node
- \( \text{attribute}_k[i] \): the attribute of the \( i \)-th child \((i > 0)\)

... in the example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( x )</th>
<th>empty[0] := ((x \equiv \epsilon))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \mid )</td>
<td>empty[0] := empty[1] \lor empty[2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \cdot )</td>
<td>empty[0] := empty[1] \land empty[2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \ast )</td>
<td>empty[0] := ( t )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( ? )</td>
<td>empty[0] := ( t )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Observations

- The *local* attribute equations need to be evaluated using a *global* algorithm that knows about the dependencies of the equations.
- In order to construct this algorithm, we need:
  1. A sequence in which the nodes of the tree are visited.
  2. A sequence within each node in which the equations are evaluated.
- This *evaluation strategy* has to be compatible with the *dependencies* between attributes.
Observations

- the *local* attribute equations need to be evaluated using a *global* algorithm that knows about the dependencies of the equations.
- In order to construct this algorithm, we need:
  1. A sequence in which the nodes of the tree are visited.
  2. A sequence within each node in which the equations are evaluated.
- This *evaluation strategy* has to be compatible with the *dependencies* between attributes.

We visualize the attribute dependencies $D(p)$ of a production $p$ in a *Local Dependency Graph*:

Let $p = N_0 \rightarrow N_1 | N_2$ in $D(p) = \{(\text{empty}[1], \text{empty}[0]), (\text{empty}[2], \text{empty}[0])\}$

$\rightarrow$ arrows point in the direction of information flow.
in order to infer an evaluation strategy, it is not enough to consider the \textit{local} attribute dependencies at each node
the evaluation strategy must also depend on the \textit{global} dependencies, that is, on the information flow between nodes
the global dependencies thus change with each new syntax tree
in the example, the parent node is always depending on children only
\( \leadsto \) a depth-first post-order traversal is possible
in general, variable dependencies can be much \textit{more complex}
Simultaneous Computation of Multiple Attributes

Computing empty, first, next from regular expressions:

\[
S \rightarrow E : \quad \begin{align*}
    \text{empty}[0] & := \text{empty}[1] \\
    \text{first}[0] & := \text{first}[1] \\
    \text{next}[1] & := \emptyset
\end{align*}
\]

\[
E \rightarrow x : \quad \begin{align*}
    \text{empty}[0] & := (x \equiv \epsilon) \\
    \text{first}[0] & := \{x \mid x \neq \epsilon\} \\
    & // (no equation for next)
\end{align*}
\]

\[
D(S \rightarrow E) : \\
D(E \rightarrow x)
\]

\[
D(S \rightarrow E) = \{ (\text{empty}[1], \text{empty}[0]), \ (\text{first}[1], \text{first}[0]) \} \\
D(E \rightarrow x) = \{ \} 
\]
Regular Expressions: Rules for Alternative

\[
E \rightarrow E | E \\
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{empty}_0 & := \text{empty}_1 \lor \text{empty}_2 \\
\text{first}_0 & := \text{first}_1 \cup \text{first}_2 \\
\text{next}_1 & := \text{next}_0 \\
\text{next}_2 & := \text{next}_0
\end{align*}
\]

\[
D(E \rightarrow E | E) :
\]

\[
D(E \rightarrow E | E) = \{ (\text{empty}_1, \text{empty}_0), (\text{empty}_2, \text{empty}_0), (\text{first}_1, \text{first}_0), (\text{first}_2, \text{first}_0), (\text{next}_0, \text{next}_2), (\text{next}_0, \text{next}_1) \}
\]
Regular Expressions: Rules for Concatenation

\[
\begin{align*}
E &\rightarrow E \cdot E \\
\text{empty}[0] &:= \text{empty}[1] \wedge \text{empty}[2] \\
\text{first}[0] &:= \text{first}[1] \cup (\text{empty}[1] ? \text{first}[2] : \emptyset) \\
\text{next}[1] &:= \text{first}[2] \cup (\text{empty}[2] ? \text{next}[0] : \emptyset) \\
\text{next}[2] &:= \text{next}[0]
\end{align*}
\]

\[D(E \rightarrow E \cdot E) = \{ (\text{empty}[1], \text{empty}[0]), (\text{empty}[2], \text{empty}[0]), (\text{empty}[2], \text{next}[1]), (\text{empty}[1], \text{first}[0]), (\text{first}[1], \text{first}[0]), (\text{first}[2], \text{first}[0]), (\text{first}[2], \text{next}[1]), (\text{next}[0], \text{next}[2]), (\text{next}[0], \text{next}[1]) \} \]
Regular Expressions: Kleene-Star and ‘?’

\[ E \rightarrow E^* \]  :  
empty[0] := t  
first[0] := first[1]  
next[1] := first[1] \cup next[0]  

\[ E \rightarrow E? \]  :  
empty[0] := t  
first[0] := first[1]  
next[1] := next[0]  

\[ D(E \rightarrow E^*) : \]  
\[ D(E \rightarrow E?) : \]  

\[ D(E \rightarrow E^*) = \{ (\text{first}[1], \text{first}[0]), (\text{first}[1], \text{next}[2]), (\text{next}[0], \text{next}[1]) \} \]

\[ D(E \rightarrow E?) = \{ (\text{first}[1], \text{first}[0]), (\text{next}[0], \text{next}[1]) \} \]
Challenges for General Attribute Systems

**Static evaluation**

Is there a static evaluation strategy, which is generally applicable?

- an evaluation strategy can only exist, if for *any* derivation tree the dependencies between attributes are acyclic
- it is $\text{DEXPTIME}$-complete to check for cyclic dependencies [Jazayeri, Odgen, Rounds, 1975]
Challenges for General Attribute Systems

Static evaluation
Is there a static evaluation strategy, which is generally applicable?

- an evaluation strategy can only exist, if for any derivation tree the dependencies between attributes are acyclic
- it is $\text{DEXPTIME}$-complete to check for cyclic dependencies
  [Jazayeri, Odgen, Rounds, 1975]

Ideas

1. Let the *User* specify the strategy
2. Determine the strategy dynamically
3. Automate *subclasses* only
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

Idea: For all nonterminals $X$ compute a set $R(X)$ of relations between its attributes, as an *overapproximation of the global dependencies* between root attributes of every production for $X$.

Describe $R(X)$s as sets of relations, similar to $D(p)$ by:
- setting up each production $X \rightarrow X_1 \ldots X_k$’s effect on the relations of $R(X)$
- compute effect on all so far accumulated evaluations of each rhs $X_i$’s $R(X_i)$
- iterate until stable
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$
The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) | (a, b) \in L\}$$

$\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S') = \{(a, b) | (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$

$
\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S') = \{(a, b) \mid (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$

$\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S) = \{(a, b) \mid (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$

... root-projects the transitive closure of relations from the $L_i$s and $D$

$$[p]^{\#}(L_1, \ldots, L_k) = \pi_0\left((D(p) \cup L_1[1] \cup \ldots \cup L_k[k])^+\right)$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$

$\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S) = \{(a, b) \mid (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$

$[\ldots]^{\#}$ root-projects the transitive closure of relations from the $L_i$s and $D$

$$[p]^{\#}(L_1, \ldots, L_k) = \pi_0((D(p) \cup L_1[1] \cup \ldots \cup L_k[k])^+)$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$

$\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S') = \{(a, b) \mid (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$

$[. ]^\# \ldots$ root-projects the transitive closure of relations from the $L_i$s and $D$

$$[p]^\#(L_1, \ldots, L_k) = \pi_0((D(p) \cup L_1[1] \cup \ldots \cup L_k[k])^+)$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$

$\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S) = \{(a, b) \mid (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$

$\lceil . \rceil^\# \ldots$ root-projects the transitive closure of relations from the $L_i$s and $D$

$$\lceil p \rceil^\#(L_1, \ldots, L_k) = \pi_0((D(p) \cup L_1[1] \cup \ldots \cup L_k[k])^+)$$

$\mathcal{R}$ maps symbols to relations (global attributes dependencies)

$$\mathcal{R}(X) \supseteq \bigcup\{\lceil p \rceil^\#(\mathcal{R}(X_1), \ldots, \mathcal{R}(X_k)) \mid p : X \rightarrow X_1 \ldots X_k\}^+ \mid p \in P$$

$$\mathcal{R}(X) \supseteq \emptyset \mid X \in (N \cup T)$$
Subclass: Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies

The 2-ary operator $L[i]$ re-decorates relations from $L$

$$L[i] = \{(a[i], b[i]) \mid (a, b) \in L\}$$

$\pi_0$ projects only onto relations between root elements only

$$\pi_0(S) = \{(a, b) \mid (a[0], b[0]) \in S\}$$

$\lceil . \rceil^\#$... root-projects the transitive closure of relations from the $L_i$s and $D$

$$\lceil p \rceil^\#(L_1, \ldots, L_k) = \pi_0((D(p) \cup L_1[1] \cup \ldots \cup L_k[k])^+)$$

$\mathcal{R}$ maps symbols to relations (global attributes dependencies)

$$\mathcal{R}(X) \supseteq \bigcup\{\lceil p \rceil^\#(\mathcal{R}(X_1), \ldots, \mathcal{R}(X_k)) \mid p : X \rightarrow X_1 \ldots X_k\}^+ \mid p \in P$$

$$\mathcal{R}(X) \supseteq \emptyset \quad | \quad X \in (N \cup T)$$

Strongly Acyclic Grammars

The system of inequalities $\mathcal{R}(X)$

- characterizes the class of strongly acyclic Dependencies
- has a unique least solution $\mathcal{R}^*(X)$ (as $\lceil . \rceil^\#$ is monotonic)
**Strongly Acyclic Attribute Dependencies**

**Strongly Acyclic Grammars**

If all $D(p) \cup R^*(X_1)[1] \cup \ldots \cup R^*(X_k)[k]$ are acyclic for all $p \in G$, $G$ is strongly acyclic.

**Idea:** we compute the least solution $R^*(X)$ of $R(X)$ by a fixpoint computation, starting from $R(X) = \emptyset$. 
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Given grammar $S \rightarrow L$, $L \rightarrow a \mid b$. Dependency graphs $D_p$:
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Start with computing $\mathcal{R}(L) = [L \rightarrow a]^\#() \sqcup [L \rightarrow b]^\#()$:

1. terminal symbols do not contribute dependencies
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Start with computing $\mathcal{R}(L) = [L \rightarrow a]^\#() \sqcup [L \rightarrow b]^\#()$: 

1. terminal symbols do not contribute dependencies
2. transitive closure of all relations in $(D(L \rightarrow a))^+$ and $(D(L \rightarrow b))^+$

Check for cycles!
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Start with computing $R(L) = \lbrack L \rightarrow a \rbrack^\#() \sqcup \lbrack L \rightarrow b \rbrack^\#()$:

1. terminal symbols do not contribute dependencies
2. transitive closure of all relations in $(D(L \rightarrow a))^+$ and $(D(L \rightarrow b))^+$
3. apply $\pi_0$
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Start with computing $\mathcal{R}(L) = \{ [L \rightarrow a]^\#() \sqcup [L \rightarrow b]^\#() :$

1. terminal symbols do not contribute dependencies
2. transitive closure of all relations in $(D(L \rightarrow a))^+$ and $(D(L \rightarrow b))^+$
3. apply $\pi_0$
4. $\mathcal{R}(L) = \{(k, j), (i, h)\}$
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Continue with $\mathcal{R}(S') = [S \rightarrow L]^\#(\mathcal{R}(L))$:

(re-decorate and embed $\mathcal{R}(L)[1]$)
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Continue with $\mathcal{R}(S) = [S \rightarrow L]^{\#}(\mathcal{R}(L))$:

1. re-decorate and embed $\mathcal{R}(L)[1]$
2. transitive closure of all relations $(D(S \rightarrow L) \cup \{(k[1], j[1])\} \cup \{(i[1], h[1])\})^{+}$

check for cycles!
**Example: Strong Acyclic Test**

Continue with $\mathcal{R}(S) = \left[ S \rightarrow L \right] \# (\mathcal{R}(L))$:

1. re-decorate and embed $\mathcal{R}(L)[1]$
2. transitive closure of all relations $(D(S \rightarrow L) \cup \{(k[1], j[1])\} \cup \{(i[1], h[1])\})^+$
3. apply $\pi_0$
Example: Strong Acyclic Test

Continue with $\mathcal{R}(S) = \left[ S \rightarrow L \right]^\#(\mathcal{R}(L))$:

1. re-decorate and embed $\mathcal{R}(L)[1]$
2. transitive closure of all relations 
   $$\left( D(S \rightarrow L) \cup \{(k[1], j[1])\} \cup \{(i[1], h[1])\} \right)^+$$
3. apply $\pi_0$
4. $\mathcal{R}(S) = \{\}$
Strong Acyclic and Acyclic

The grammar $S \rightarrow L$, $L \rightarrow a \mid b$ has only two derivation trees which are both *acyclic*:

It is *not strongly acyclic* since the over-approximated global dependence graph for the non-terminal $L$ contributes to a cycle when computing $R(S)$:
Possible strategies:

1. let the *user* define the evaluation order
Possible strategies:

1. let the *user* define the evaluation order
2. *automatic* strategy based on the dependencies
Possible strategies:

1. let the *user* define the evaluation order
2. *automatic* strategy based on the dependencies
3. consider a *fixed* strategy and only allow an attribute system that can be evaluated using this strategy
Possible *automatic* strategies:
Possible *automatic* strategies:

1. **demand-driven evaluation**
   - start with the evaluation of any required attribute
   - if the equation for this attribute relies on as-of-yet unevaluated attributes, evaluate these recursively
Possible *automatic* strategies:

1. **demand-driven evaluation**
   - start with the evaluation of any required attribute
   - if the equation for this attribute relies on as-of-yet unevaluated attributes, evaluate these recursively

2. **evaluation in passes**
   - for each pass, pre-compute a global strategy to visit the *nodes* together with a local strategy for evaluation *within each node* type
   - ~*minimize* the number of *visits* to each node
Example: Demand-Driven Evaluation

Compute \textit{next} at leaves $a_2$, $a_3$ and $b_4$ in the expression $(a|b)^* a(a|b)$:

\[
\begin{align*}
| & : \quad \text{next}[1] := \text{next}[0] \\
& \quad \text{next}[2] := \text{next}[0] \\
\cdot & : \quad \text{next}[1] := \text{first}[2] \cup (\text{empty}[2] ? \text{next}[0] : \emptyset) \\
& \quad \text{next}[2] := \text{next}[0]
\end{align*}
\]
Example: Demand-Driven Evaluation

Compute next at leaves $a_2, a_3$ and $b_4$ in the expression $(a|b)^*a(a|b)$:

\[
|\quad: \quad \text{next}[1] := \text{next}[0] \\
\text{next}[2] := \text{next}[0]
\]

\[
\cdot\quad: \quad \text{next}[1] := \text{first}[2] \cup (\text{empty}[2] ? \text{next}[0]: \emptyset) \\
\text{next}[2] := \text{next}[0]
\]
Example: Demand-Driven Evaluation

Compute $\text{next}$ at leaves $a_2$, $a_3$ and $b_4$ in the expression $(a|b)^* a (a|b)$:

\[
\begin{align*}
\mid & : \quad \text{next[1]} := \text{next}[0] \\
& \quad \text{next[2]} := \text{next}[0] \\
\cdot & : \quad \text{next[1]} := \text{first}[2] \cup (\text{empty}[2] ? \text{next}[0] : \emptyset) \\
& \quad \text{next[2]} := \text{next}[0]
\end{align*}
\]
Observations

- each node must contain a pointer to its parent
- *only required* attributes are evaluated
- the evaluation sequence depends – in general – on the actual syntax tree
- the algorithm must track which attributes it has already evaluated
- the algorithm may visit nodes more often than necessary

$\sim$ the algorithm is not local
Demand-Driven Evaluation

Observations

- each node must contain a pointer to its parent
- *only required* attributes are evaluated
- the evaluation sequence depends – in general – on the actual syntax tree
- the algorithm must track which attributes it has already evaluated
- the algorithm may visit nodes more often than necessary
  \( \leadsto \) the algorithm is not local

in principle:
- evaluation strategy is dynamic: difficult to debug
- usually all attributes in all nodes are required
  \( \leadsto \) computation of all attributes is often cheaper
Demand-Driven Evaluation

Observations

- each node must contain a pointer to its parent
- *only required* attributes are evaluated
- the evaluation sequence depends – in general – on the actual syntax tree
- the algorithm must track which attributes it has already evaluated
- the algorithm may visit nodes more often than necessary

\[\rightsquigarrow\text{the algorithm is not local}\]

in principle:
- evaluation strategy is dynamic: difficult to debug
- usually all attributes in all nodes are required

\[\rightsquigarrow\text{computation of all attributes is often cheaper}\]

\[\rightsquigarrow\text{perform evaluation in passes}\]
Implementing State

Problem: In many cases some sort of state is required.
Example: numbering the leaves of a syntax tree
Example: Implementing Numbering of Leaf Nodes

Idea:
- Use helper attributes `pre` and `post`
- In `pre` we pass the value for the first leaf down (inherited attribute)
- In `post` we pass the value of the last leaf up (synthesized attribute)

```
root:  pre[0] := 0
      pre[1] := pre[0]
      post[0] := post[1]

node:  pre[1] := pre[0]
       post[0] := post[2]

leaf:   post[0] := pre[0] + 1
```
the attribute system is apparently strongly acyclic
the attribute system is apparently strongly acyclic

- each node computes
  - the inherited attributes before descending into a child node (corresponding to a pre-order traversal)
  - the synthesized attributes after returning from a child node (corresponding to post-order traversal)
the attribute system is apparently strongly acyclic
each node computes
- the inherited attributes before descending into a child node
  (corresponding to a pre-order traversal)
- the synthesized attributes after returning from a child node
  (corresponding to post-order traversal)

**Definition L-Attributed Grammars**

An attribute system is \( L \)-attributed, if for all productions \( S \rightarrow S_1 \ldots S_n \) every inherited attribute of \( S_j \) where \( 1 \leq j \leq n \) only depends on
1. the attributes of \( S_1, S_2, \ldots S_{j-1} \) and
2. the inherited attributes of \( S \).
L-Attributation

Background:

- the attributes of an \( L \)-attributed grammar can be evaluated during parsing
- important if no syntax tree is required or if error messages should be emitted while parsing
- example: pocket calculator
L-Attributation

Background:

- the attributes of an $L$-attributed grammar can be evaluated during parsing
- important if no syntax tree is required or if error messages should be emitted while parsing
- example: pocket calculator

$L$-attributed grammars have a fixed evaluation strategy: a single *depth-first* traversal

- in general: partition all attributes into $A = A_1 \cup \ldots \cup A_n$ such that for all attributes in $A_i$ the attribute system is $L$-attributed
- perform a *depth-first* traversal for each attribute set $A_i$

$\leadsto$ craft attribute system in a way that they can be partitioned into few $L$-attributed sets
symbol tables, type checking/inference, and simple code generation can all be specified using $L$-attributed grammars
Practical Applications

- symbol tables, type checking/inference, and simple code generation can all be specified using $L$-attributed grammars
- most applications *annotate* syntax trees with additional information
Practical Applications

- symbol tables, type checking/inference, and simple code generation can all be specified using $L$-attributed grammars
- most applications *annotate* syntax trees with additional information
- the nodes in a syntax tree usually have different *types* that depend on the non-terminal that the node represents
symbol tables, type checking/inference, and simple code generation can all be specified using $L$-attributed grammars.

most applications *annotate* syntax trees with additional information.

the nodes in a syntax tree usually have different *types* that depend on the non-terminal that the node represents.

the different types of non-terminals are characterised by the set of attributes with which they are decorated.
symbol tables, type checking/inference, and simple code
generation can all be specified using \( L \)-attributed grammars

most applications \textit{annotate} syntax trees with additional
information

the nodes in a syntax tree usually have different \textit{types} that
depend on the non-terminal that the node represents

\( \rightsquigarrow \) the different types of non-terminals are characterised by the set
of attributes with which they are decorated

Example: a statement may have two attributes containing valid identifiers:
one ingoing (inherited) set and one outgoing (synthesised) set; in contrast, an
expression only has an ingoing set
Implementation of Attribute Systems via a Visitor

- class with a method for every non-terminal in the grammar

```java
public abstract class Regex {
    public abstract void accept(Visitor v);
}
```

- attribute-evaluation works via pre-order / post-order callbacks

```java
public interface Visitor {
    default void pre(OrEx re) {}  
    default void pre(AndEx re) {}  
...
    default void post(OrEx re) {}  
    default void post(AndEx re) {}  
}
```

- we pre-define a depth-first traversal of the syntax tree

```java
public class OrEx extends Regex {
    Regex l, r;
    public void accept(Visitor v) {
        v.pre(this); l.accept(v); v.inter(this);  
        r.accept(v);  v.post(this);
    }
}
```
Example: Leaf Numbering

```java
public abstract class AbstractVisitor implements Visitor {
    public void pre(OrEx re) { pr(re); }
    public void pre(AndEx re) { pr(re); }

    public void post(OrEx re) { po(re); }
    public void post(AndEx re) { po(re); }
    abstract void po(BinEx re);
    abstract void in(BinEx re);
    abstract void pr(BinEx re);
}

public class LeafNum extends AbstractVisitor {
    public LeafNum(Regex r) { n.put(r, 0); r.accept(this); }
    public Map<Regex, Integer> n = new HashMap<>();
    public void pr(Const r) { n.put(r, n.get(r) + 1); }
    public void pr(BinEx r) { n.put(r.l, n.get(r)); }
    public void in(BinEx r) { n.put(r.r, n.get(r.l)); }
    public void po(BinEx r) { n.put(r, n.get(r.r)); }
}
```
Chapter 2:
Decl-Use Analysis
Symbol Tables

Consider the following Java code:

```java
void foo() {
  int A;
  while (true) {
    double A;
    A = 0.5;
    write(A);
    break;
  }
  A = 2;
  bar();
  write(A);
}
```

- within the body of the loop, the definition of `A` is shadowed by the local definition
- each declaration of a variable `v` requires allocating memory for `v`
- accessing `v` requires finding the declaration the access is bound to
- a binding is not visible when a local declaration of the same name is in scope
Scope of Identifiers

```c
void foo() {
    int A;
    while (true) {
        double A;
        A = 0.5;
        write(A);
        break;
    }
    A = 2;
    bar();
    write(A);
}
```
Scope of Identifiers

```c
void foo() {
    int A;
    while (true) {
        double A;
        A = 0.5;
        write(A);
        break;
    }
    A = 2;
    bar();
    write(A);
}
```
Scope of Identifiers

```c
void foo() {
    int A;
    while (true) {
        double A;
        A = 0.5;
        write(A);
        break;
    }
    A = 2;
    bar();
    write(A);
}
```

administration of identifiers can be quite complicated...
Resolving Identifiers

**Observation:** each identifier in the AST must be translated into a memory access
Resolving Identifiers

Observation: each identifier in the AST must be translated into a memory access

Problem: for each identifier, find out what memory needs to be accessed by providing rapid access to its declaration

Idea:

1. rapid access: replace every identifier by a unique integer
   → integers as keys: comparisons of integers is faster
Resolving Identifiers

Observation: each identifier in the AST must be translated into a memory access

Problem: for each identifier, find out what memory needs to be accessed by providing *rapid* access to its *declaration*

Idea:

1. *rapid* access: replace every identifier by a *unique* integer
   → integers as keys: comparisons of integers is faster
2. link each usage of a variable to the *declaration* of that variable
   → for languages without explicit declarations, create declarations when a variable is first encountered
Rapid Access: Replace Strings with Integers

Idea for Algorithm:
Input: a sequence of strings
Output:
1 sequence of numbers
2 table that allows to retrieve the string that corresponds to a number

Apply this algorithm on each identifier during scanning.

Implementation approach:
- count the number of new-found identifiers in int count
- maintain a hashtable $S : \text{String} \rightarrow \text{int}$ to remember numbers for known identifiers

We thus define the function:

```c
int indexForIdentifier(String w) {
    if (S(w) ≡ undefined) {
        S = S ⊕ \{w ↦ count\};
        return count++;
    } else return S(w);
}
```
Implementation: Hashtables for Strings

1. allocate an array $M$ of sufficient size $m$
2. choose a hash function $H : \text{String} \rightarrow [0, m - 1]$ with:
   - $H(w)$ is cheap to compute
   - $H$ distributes the occurring words equally over $[0, m - 1]$

Possible generic choices for sequence types ($\vec{x} = \langle x_0, \ldots x_{r-1} \rangle$):

$$H_0(\vec{x}) = (x_0 + x_{r-1}) \% m$$

$$H_1(\vec{x}) = (\sum_{i=0}^{r-1} x_i \cdot p^i) \% m$$

$$= (x_0 + p \cdot (x_1 + p \cdot (\ldots + p \cdot x_{r-1} \ldots ))) \% m$$

for some prime number $p$ (e.g. 31)

✗ The hash value of $w$ may not be unique!
   → Append $(w, i)$ to a linked list located at $M[H(w)]$
   - Finding the index for $w$, we compare $w$ with all $x$ for which $H(w) = H(x)$

✓ access on average:
   - insert: $\mathcal{O}(1)$
   - lookup: $\mathcal{O}(1)$
Example: Replacing Strings with Integers

Input:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Peter</th>
<th>Piper</th>
<th>picked</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>peck</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>pickled</th>
<th>peppers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If</td>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>Piper</td>
<td>picked</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>peck</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>pickled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wheres</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>peck</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>pickled</td>
<td>peppers</td>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>Piper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Output:
Example: Replacing Strings with Integers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input:</th>
<th>Output:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers</td>
<td>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 9 10 4 5 6 7 0 1 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: Replacing Strings with Integers

Input:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Peter</th>
<th>Piper</th>
<th>picked</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>peck</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>pickled</th>
<th>peppers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

If Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers

wheres the peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked

Output:

```
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
7 9 10 4 5 6 7 0 1 2
```

and

Hasetable with $m = 7$ and $H_0$:

```
0 Peter
1 Piper
2 picked
3 a
4 peck
5 of
6 pickled
7 peppers
8 If
9 wheres
10 the
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>If 8</th>
<th>the 10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pickled 6</td>
<td>peck 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Piper 1</td>
<td>Peter 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Refer Uses to Declarations: Symbol Tables

Check for the correct usage of variables:

- Traverse the syntax tree in a suitable sequence, such that
  - each declaration is visited before its use
  - the currently visible declaration is the last one visited

→ perfect for an L-attributed grammar
  - equation system for basic block must add and remove identifiers

- for each identifier, we manage a stack of declarations
  1. if we visit a declaration, we push it onto the stack of its identifier
  2. upon leaving the scope, we remove it from the stack

- if we visit a usage of an identifier, we pick the top-most declaration from its stack

- if the stack of the identifier is empty, we have found an undeclared identifier
Example: A Table of Stacks

```c
// Abstract locations in comments
{
    int a, b; // V, W
    b = 5;
    if (b>3) {
        int a, c; // X, Y
        a = 3;
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    } else {
        int c; // Z
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    }
    b = a + b;
}
```
Example: A Table of Stacks

```c
    // Abstract locations in comments
    {
        int a, b; // V, W
        b = 5;
        if (b>3) {
            int a, c; // X, Y
            a = 3;
            c = a + 1;
            b = c;
        } else {
            int c; // Z
            c = a + 1;
            b = c;
        }
        b = a + b;
    }
```
Example: A Table of Stacks

```
// Abstract locations in comments
{
    int a, b; // V, W
    b = 5;
    if (b>3) {
        int a, c; // X, Y
        a = 3;
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    } else {
        int c; // Z
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    }
    b = a + b;
}
```
Example: A Table of Stacks

```c

// Abstract locations in comments
{
    int a, b;  // V, W
    b = 5;
    if (b>3) {
        int a, c;  // X, Y
        a = 3;
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    } else {
        int c;  // Z
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    }
    b = a + b;
}
```

```plaintext

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

208 / 287
Example: A Table of Stacks

```c
// Abstract locations in comments
{
    int a, b;    // V, W
    b = 5;
    if (b>3) {
        int a, c;    // X, Y
        a = 3;
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    } else {
        int c;      // Z
        c = a + 1;
        b = c;
    }
    b = a + b;
}
```

Diagram:
```
Decl-Use Analysis: Annotating the Syntax Tree

d declaration node
b basic block
a assignment

```
{ int a, b; // V, W
  b = 5;
  if (b>3) {
    int a, c; // X, Y
    a = 3;
    c = a + 1;
    b = c;
  }
  else {
    int c; // Z
    c = a + 1;
    b = c;
  }
  b = a + b;
}
```
Decl-Use Analysis: Annotating the Syntax Tree

d  declaration node
b  basic block
a  assignment

1  {
2      int a, b;  // V, W
3      b = 5;
4      if (b>3) {
5          int a, c;  // X, Y
6              a = 3;
7              c = a + 1;
8              b = c;
9          }  else {
10              int c;  // Z
11                  c = a + 1;
12                  b = c;
13          }
14      b = a + b;
15  }
Alternative Implementations for Symbol Tables

when using a list to store the symbol table, storing a marker indicating the old head of the list is sufficient

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  a \\
  b 
\end{array}
\]

in front of if-statement
Alternative Implementations for Symbol Tables

- when using a list to store the symbol table, storing a marker indicating the old head of the list is sufficient

\[
\begin{array}{c}
a \\
b \\
c
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
a \\
b
\end{array}
\]

in front of if-statement then-branch
Alternative Implementations for Symbol Tables

- When using a list to store the symbol table, storing a marker indicating the old head of the list is sufficient.

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{in front of if-statement} & \text{then-branch} & \text{else-branch}
\end{array} \]
Alternative Implementations for Symbol Tables

- when using a list to store the symbol table, storing a marker indicating the old head of the list is sufficient

![Diagram showing list structure]

- instead of lists of symbols, it is possible to use a list of hash tables; more efficient in large, shallow programs

- an even more elegant solution: persistent trees (updates return fresh trees with references to the old tree where possible); a persistent tree $t$ can be passed down into a basic block where new elements may be added, yielding a $t'$; after examining the basic block, the analysis proceeds with the unchanged old $t$
Alternative Implementations for Symbol Tables

- when using a list to store the symbol table, storing a marker indicating the old head of the list is sufficient

- instead of lists of symbols, it is possible to use a list of hash tables; more efficient in large, shallow programs

- an even more elegant solution: persistent trees (updates return fresh trees with references to the old tree where possible)
  - a persistent tree $t$ can be passed down into a basic block where new elements may be added, yielding a $t'$; after examining the basic block, the analysis proceeds with the unchanged old $t$
Type Definitions in C

A type definition is a *synonym* for a type expression. In C they are introduced using the `typedef` keyword. Type definitions are useful

- as abbreviation:

```c
typedef struct { int x; int y; } point_t;
```

- to construct *recursive* types:

Possible declaration in C:

```c
struct list { 
  int info;
  struct list* next;
} 
struct list* head;
```

more readable:

```c
typedef struct list list list_t;
struct list { 
  int info;
  list_t* next;
} 
list_t* head;
```
The C grammar distinguishes `typedef-name` and `identifier`. Consider the following declarations:

```c
typedef struct { int x, y } point_t;
point_t origin;
```

Relevant C grammar:

- `declaration` → `(declaration-specifier)^+ declarator ;`
- `declaration-specifier` → `static | volatile ... typedef | void | char | char ... typename`
- `declarator` → `identifier | ...`
The C grammar distinguishes typedef-name and identifier. Consider the following declarations:

```c
typedef struct { int x, y } point_t;
point_t origin;
```

Relevant C grammar:
- `declaration` → `(declaration-specifier)^+ declarator ;`
- `declaration-specifier` → `static | volatile ... typedef | void | char | char ... typename`
- `declarator` → `identifier | ...`

**Problem:**
- parser adds `point_t` to the table of types when the declaration is reduced
Type Definitions in C

The C grammar distinguishes `typedef-name` and `identifier`. Consider the following declarations:

```c
typedef struct { int x,y } point_t;
point_t origin;
```

Relevant C grammar:

- `declaration` → `(declaration-specifier)^+ declarator ;`
- `declaration-specifier` → `static | volatile ... typedef | void | char | char ... typename`
- `declarator` → `identifier | ...`

**Problem:**

- parser adds `point_t` to the table of types when the `declaration` is reduced
- parser state has at least one look-ahead token
Type Definitions in C

The C grammar distinguishes `typedef-name` and `identifier`. Consider the following declarations:

```
typedef struct { int x, y } point_t;
point_t origin;
```

Relevant C grammar:

- `declaration` → `(declaration-specifier)^+ declarator ;`
- `declaration-specifier` → `static | volatile ... typedef | void | char | char ... typename`
- `declarator` → `identifier | ...`

**Problem:**

- parser adds `point_t` to the table of types when the `declaration` is reduced
- parser state has at least one look-ahead token
- the scanner has already read `point_t` in line two as `identifier`
Type Definitions in C: Solutions

Relevant C grammar:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{declaration} & \rightarrow (\text{declaration-specifier})^+ \text{ declarator} ; \\
\text{declaration-specifier} & \rightarrow \text{static} | \text{volatile} \cdots \text{typedef} \\
& \quad | \text{void} | \text{char} | \text{char} \cdots \text{typename} \\
\text{declarator} & \rightarrow \text{identifier} | \cdots
\end{align*}
\]

Solution is difficult:
Type Definitions in C: Solutions

Relevant C grammar:

\[
\text{declaration} \rightarrow (\text{declaration-specifier})^+ \ \text{declarator} \\
\text{declaration-specifier} \rightarrow \text{static} | \text{volatile} \ldots \ \text{typedef} \\
| \text{void} | \text{char} | \text{char} \ldots \ \text{typename} \\
\text{declarator} \rightarrow \text{identifier} | \ldots
\]

Solution is difficult:

- try to fix the look-ahead inside the parser
Type Definitions in C: Solutions

Relevant C grammar:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{declaration} & \rightarrow (\text{declaration-specifier})^+ \text{ declarator} ; \\
\text{declaration-specifier} & \rightarrow \text{static} | \text{volatile} \cdots \text{typedef} \\
& \quad | \text{void} | \text{char} | \text{char} \cdots \text{typename} \\
\text{declarator} & \rightarrow \text{identifier} | \cdots
\end{align*}
\]

Solution is difficult:

- try to fix the look-ahead inside the parser
- add a rule to the grammar:

  \[
  \text{typename} \rightarrow \text{identifier}
  \]
Type Definitions in C: Solutions

Relevant C grammar:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{declaration} & \rightarrow (\text{declaration-specifier})^+ \text{ declarator ;} \\
\text{declaration-specifier} & \rightarrow \text{static} | \text{volatile} \cdots \text{typedef} \\
& \quad | \text{void} | \text{char} | \text{char} \cdots \text{typename} \\
\text{declarator} & \rightarrow \text{identifier} | \cdots
\end{align*}
\]

Solution is difficult:

- try to fix the look-ahead inside the parser
- add a rule to the grammar:
  \[
  \text{typename} \rightarrow \text{identifier}
  \]
- register type name earlier

S/R- & R/R- Conflicts!!
Type Definitions in C: Solutions

Relevant C grammar:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{declaration} & \rightarrow (\text{declaration-specifier})^+ \text{ declarator} ; \\
\text{declaration-specifier} & \rightarrow \text{static} | \text{volatile} \cdots \text{typedef} \\
& \quad | \text{void} | \text{char} | \text{char} \cdots \text{typename} \\
\text{declarator} & \rightarrow \text{identifier} | \cdots
\end{align*}
\]

Solution is difficult:

- try to fix the look-ahead inside the parser
- add a rule to the grammar:
  
  \[
  \text{typename} \rightarrow \text{identifier}
  \]
- register type name earlier
  
  - separate rule for \texttt{typedef} production
Type Definitions in C: Solutions

Relevant C grammar:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{declaration} & \rightarrow (\text{declaration-specifier})^+ \text{ declarator ;} \\
\text{declaration-specifier} & \rightarrow \text{static} | \text{volatile} \cdots \text{ typedef} \\
& \quad | \text{ void} | \text{ char} | \text{ char} \cdots \text{ typename} \\
\text{declarator} & \rightarrow \text{ identifier} | \cdots
\end{align*}
\]

Solution is difficult:

- try to fix the look-ahead inside the parser
- add a rule to the grammar:
  \[
  \text{typename} \rightarrow \text{ identifier}
  \]
- register type name earlier
  - separate rule for \text{ typedef} production
  - call alternative \text{ declarator} production that registers \text{ identifier} as type name
Chapter 3: Type Checking
Goal of Type Checking

In most mainstream (imperative / object oriented / functional) programming languages, variables and functions have a fixed type. For example: \texttt{int, void*, struct \{ int x; int y; \}}.
Goal of Type Checking

In most mainstream (imperative / object oriented / functional) programming languages, variables and functions have a fixed type. For example: `int, void*, struct { int x; int y; }`.

Types are useful to

- manage memory
- to avoid certain run-time errors
Goal of Type Checking

In most mainstream (imperative / object oriented / functional) programming languages, variables and functions have a fixed type. For example: `int, void*, struct { int x; int y; }`.

Types are useful to:

- manage memory
- to avoid certain run-time errors

In imperative and object-oriented programming languages a declaration has to specify a type. The compiler then checks for a type correct use of the declared entity.
Type Expressions

Types are given using type-\textit{expressions}. The set of type expressions $T$ contains:

1. base types: \texttt{int}, \texttt{char}, \texttt{float}, \texttt{void}, ...
2. type constructors that can be applied to other types
Type Expressions

Types are given using type-\textit{expressions}. The set of type expressions $T$ contains:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{1} \textit{base types}: \texttt{int, char, float, void, ...}
  \item \textbf{2} \textit{type constructors} that can be applied to other types
\end{itemize}

example for type constructors in C:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{structures}: \texttt{struct} \{ \textit{t} \textit{a} \textit{1}; \ldots \textit{t} \textit{k} \textit{a} \textit{k}; \}
  \item \textit{pointers}: \texttt{t \*}
  \item \textit{arrays}: \texttt{t [ ]}
    \begin{itemize}
    \item the size of an array can be specified
    \item the variable to be declared is written between \textit{t} and \texttt{[n]}
    \end{itemize}
  \item \textit{functions}: \texttt{t (t\textit{1}, \ldots , t\textit{k})}
    \begin{itemize}
    \item the variable to be declared is written between \textit{t} and \texttt{(t\textit{1}, \ldots , t\textit{k})}
    \item in ML function types are written as: \texttt{t\textit{1} * \ldots * t\textit{k} \rightarrow t}
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Type Checking

Problem:

**Given:** A set of type declarations $\Gamma = \{t_1 \ x_1; \ldots \ t_m \ x_m; \}$

**Check:** Can an expression $e$ be given the type $t$?
Type Checking

Problem:

Given: A set of type declarations \( \Gamma = \{ t_1 \ x_1; \ldots t_m \ x_m; \} \)

Check: Can an expression \( e \) be given the type \( t \)?

Example:

```c
struct list { int info; struct list* next; };
int f(struct list* l) { return 1; };
struct { struct list* c; }* b;
int* a[11];
```

Consider the expression:

\[ \ast a[f(b->c)] + 2; \]
Type Checking using the Syntax Tree

Check the expression \( \star a [ f ( b \rightarrow c ) ] + 2 \):

Idea:
- traverse the syntax tree bottom-up
- for each identifier, we lookup its type in \( \Gamma \)
- constants such as 2 or 0.5 have a fixed type
- the types of the inner nodes of the tree are deduced using typing rules
Type Systems

Formally: consider *judgements* of the form:

\[ \Gamma \vdash e : t \]

// (in the type environment \( \Gamma \) the expression \( e \) has type \( t \))

Axioms:

Const: \[ \Gamma \vdash c : t_c \] \((t_c \text{ type of constant } c)\)

Var: \[ \Gamma \vdash x : \Gamma(x) \] \((x \text{ Variable})\)

Rules:

Ref: \[
\frac{\Gamma \vdash e : t}{\Gamma \vdash \& e : t^*}
\]

Deref: \[
\frac{\Gamma \vdash e : t^*}{\Gamma \vdash *e : t}
\]
More rules for typing an expression:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Rules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Array</strong></td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e_1 : t \times \Gamma \vdash e_2 : \text{int}$</td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e_1[e_2] : t$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e_1 : t[\ ] \Gamma \vdash e_2 : \text{int}$</td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e_1[e_2] : t$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Struct</strong></td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e : \text{struct}{ t_1 a_1; \ldots t_m a_m; }$</td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e.a_i : t_i$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>App</strong></td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e : t(t_1, \ldots, t_m) \Gamma \vdash e_1 : t_1 \ldots \Gamma \vdash e_m : t_m$</td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e(e_1, \ldots, e_m) : t$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Op □</strong></td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e_1 : t \Gamma \vdash e_2 : t$</td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e_1 □ e_2 : t$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Explicit Cast</strong></td>
<td>$\Gamma \vdash e : t_1$</td>
<td>$t_1$ can be converted to $t_2$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Example: Type Checking

Given expression \(*a[f(b\rightarrow c)]+2\) and

\[\Gamma = \{
    \text{struct list} \{ \text{int info}; \text{struct list* next}; \};
    \text{int } f(\text{struct list* l});
    \text{struct} \{ \text{struct list* c; \}}* b;
    \text{int* } a[11];\}
\]
Example: Type Checking

Given expression $\ast a[f(b\rightarrow c)] + 2$:
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression: 

\[ \ast a [ f (b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : \]

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{DEREF} \\
\Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \\
\hline
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{OP} \\
\hline
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t
\end{array} \]
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \( \ast a \[ f(b \rightarrow c) \] + 2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\Gamma \vdash a : & \quad \text{VAR} \quad \text{ARRAY} \\
\Gamma \vdash f : _{(t)} & \quad \text{VAR} \quad \text{APP} \\
\Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : & \quad \text{int} \\
\Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : & \quad \text{DEREF} \\
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : & \quad \text{OP} \\
\Gamma \vdash 2 : & \quad \text{CONST} \\
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : & \quad \text{OP} 
\end{align*}
\]
**Example: Type Checking – More formally:**

Given expression $\star a[f(b\rightarrow c)] + 2$:

- **VAR** $\Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}{\text{struct list }\ast}$
- **DEREF** $\Gamma \vdash \ast b : \text{struct}{\text{struct list }\ast}$
- **STRUCT** $\Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list}$
- **VAR** $\Gamma \vdash a : \text{int} \ast$
- **APP** $\Gamma \vdash f : _{(t)}$;
  $\Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : t$
- **VAR** $\Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : \text{int}$
- **DEREF** $\Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int} \ast$
- **CONST** $\Gamma \vdash 2 : t$
- **OP** $\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t$
- $\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t$
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \( *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list}\,*c;\}\,* \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *b : \\
\text{STRUCT} & \quad \Gamma \vdash (*b).c : \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f : _{(t)} \\
\text{APP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : \text{int} \\
\text{ARRAY} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a : \\
\text{OP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{CONST} & \quad \Gamma \vdash 2 : t \\
\text{OP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t
\end{align*}
\]
**Example: Type Checking – More formally:**

Given expression \( \ast a [ f (b \rightarrow c)] + 2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } \ast c;\}\ast \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } \ast c;\} \\
\text{STRUCT} & \quad \Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f : (_(t)) \quad \Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : t \\
\text{APP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : \text{int} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a : \\
\text{ARRAY} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \\
\text{OP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{CONST} & \quad \Gamma \vdash 2 : t \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t \\
\end{align*}
\]
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \( *a[ f(b \rightarrow c) ] + 2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}{\text{struct list } *c;}* \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *b : \text{struct}{\text{struct list } *c;} \\
\text{STRUCT} & \quad \Gamma \vdash (b).c : \text{struct list}\* \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a : \text{int}\* \\
\text{APP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f : _{(\text{struct list}\*)} \quad \Gamma \vdash (b).c : \text{struct list} \\
\text{ARRAY} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int} \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{OP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{CONST} & \quad \Gamma \vdash 2 : t \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t
\end{align*}
\]
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \( \ast a[ f(b \rightarrow c) ] + 2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{VAR} & \\
\Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } \ast c;\}\ast \\
\text{DEREF} & \\
\Gamma \vdash \ast b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } \ast c;\} \\
\text{STRUCT} & \\
\Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list}\ast \\
\text{VAR} & \\
\Gamma \vdash a : \\
\text{APP} & \\
\Gamma \vdash f : \text{int}(\text{struct list}\ast) \checkmark \\
\Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list}\ast \\
\Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int} \checkmark \\
\text{DEREF} & \\
\Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \\
\text{OP} & \\
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{CONST} & \\
\Gamma \vdash 2 : t \\
\Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t
\end{align*}
\]
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \( *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct} \{ \text{struct list } \ast c; \} \ast \\
\text{STRUCT} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast b : \text{struct} \{ \text{struct list } \ast c; \} \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list} \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a : \text{int} \ast [] \\
\text{ARRAY} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{OP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f : \text{int} (\text{struct list} \ast ) \checkmark \\
\text{APP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : \text{int} \checkmark \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash f : \text{int} (\text{struct list} \ast ) \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list} \ast \\
\text{VAR} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a : \text{int} \ast [] \\
\text{ARRAY} & \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \\
\text{DEREF} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : t \\
\text{CONST} & \quad \Gamma \vdash 2 : t \\
\text{OP} & \quad \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t
\end{align*}
\]
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \( *a[f(b \to c)] + 2 \):
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression \(*a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2:*

- **STRUCT**
  \[ \Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } \ast c;\}\ast \]
  \[ \Gamma \vdash \ast b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } \ast c;\} \]
  \[ \Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list}^* \]

- **ARRAY**
  \[ \Gamma \vdash a : \text{int}^*[] \]

- **VAR**
  \[ \Gamma \vdash f : \text{int}(\text{struct list}^*) \checkmark \quad \Gamma \vdash (\ast b).c : \text{struct list}^* \]
  \[ \Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : \text{int} \checkmark \]
  \[ \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int}^* \]

- **DEREF**
  \[ \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int}^* \]
  \[ \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int} \]
  \[ \Gamma \vdash \ast a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t \]

- **OP**
  \[ \Gamma \vdash 2 : t \]

- **CONST**
  \[ \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : t \]
Example: Type Checking – More formally:

Given expression $*a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2$:

$$
\begin{align*}
&\text{VAR} \quad \Gamma \vdash b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } *c;\} * \\
&\text{DEREF} \quad \Gamma \vdash *b : \text{struct}\{\text{struct list } *c;\} \\
&\text{STRUCT} \quad \Gamma \vdash (\text{*b})c : \text{struct list*} \\
&\text{VAR} \quad \Gamma \vdash a : \text{int*[]} \\
&\text{APP} \quad \Gamma \vdash f : \text{int(\text{struct list*})} \; \checkmark \\
&\quad \Gamma \vdash (\text{*b})c : \text{struct list*} \\
&\quad \Gamma \vdash f(b \rightarrow c) : \text{int} \; \checkmark \\
&\quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int*} \\
&\text{DEREF} \quad \Gamma \vdash a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int*} \\
&\quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] : \text{int} \\
&\text{OP} \quad \Gamma \vdash *a[f(b \rightarrow c)] + 2 : \text{int} \\
&\text{CONST} \quad \Gamma \vdash 2 : \text{int} \; \checkmark
\end{align*}
$$
Equality of Types

Summary of Type Checking

- Choosing which rule to apply at an AST node is determined by the type of the child nodes.
- Determining the rule requires a check for \( \sim \) equality of types.

Type equality in C:

- `struct A {}` and `struct B {}` are considered to be different.
- \( \sim \) the compiler could re-order the fields of `A` and `B` independently (not allowed in C).
- To extend an record `A` with more fields, it has to be embedded into another record:
  ```c
  struct B {
    struct A;
    int field_of_B;
  } extension_of_A;
  ```
- After issuing `typedef int C;` the types `C` and `int` are the same.
Structural Type Equality

Alternative interpretation of type equality (does not hold in C):

*semantically*, two types $t_1, t_2$ can be considered as *equal* if they accept the same set of access paths.

**Example:**

```c
struct list {  
  int info;  
  struct list* next;
}

struct list1 {  
  int info;  
  struct {  
    int info;
    struct list1* next;
  }* next;
}
```

Consider declarations `struct list* l` and `struct list1* l`. Both allow

```
  l->info  l->next->info
```

but the two declarations of `l` have unequal types in C.
Algorithm for Testing Structural Equality

Idea:

- track a set of equivalence queries of type expressions
- if two types are syntactically equal, we stop and report success
- otherwise, reduce the equivalence query to a several equivalence queries on (hopefully) simpler type expressions

Suppose that recursive types were introduced using type definitions:

```c
typedef A t
```

(we omit the $\Gamma$). Then define the following rules:
Rules for Well-Typedness

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{typedef } s &\ A \\
\text{struct } \{ s_1 &a_1; \ldots s_m a_m; \} &\text{ struct } \{ t_1 a_1; \ldots t_m a_m; \} \\
\end{align*}
\]
Example:

typedef struct {int info; A * next; } A

typedef struct {int info; struct {int info; B * next; } * next; } B

We ask, for instance, if the following equality holds:

\[
\text{struct \{int info; A * next; \} = B}
\]

We construct the following deduction tree:
Proof for the Example:

typedef struct {int info; A * next; } A

typedef struct {int info; struct {int info; B * next; } * next; } B
We implement a function that implements the equivalence query for two types by applying the deduction rules:

- if no deduction rule applies, then the two types are not equal
- if the deduction rule for expanding a type definition applies, the function is called recursively with a potentially larger type
- in case an equivalence query appears a second time, the types are equal by definition
We implement a function that implements the equivalence query for two types by applying the deduction rules:

- if no deduction rule applies, then the two types are not equal
- if the deduction rule for expanding a type definition applies, the function is called recursively with a potentially larger type
- in case an equivalence query appears a second time, the types are equal by definition

**Termination**

- the set $D$ of all declared types is finite
- there are no more than $|D|^2$ different equivalence queries
- repeated queries for the same inputs are automatically satisfied

$\Rightarrow$ termination is ensured
On the arithmetic basic types `char`, `int`, `long`, etc. there exists a rich *subtype* hierarchy.

$t_1 \leq t_2$, means that the values of type $t_1$

1. form a **subset** of the values of type $t_2$;
2. can be converted into a value of type $t_2$;
3. fulfill the requirements of type $t_2$;
4. are assignable to variables of type $t_2$. 
Subtypes

On the arithmetic basic types `char`, `int`, `long`, etc. there exists a rich *subtype* hierarchy

$t_1 \leq t_2$, means that the values of type $t_1$

1. form a *subset* of the values of type $t_2$;
2. can be converted into a value of type $t_2$;
3. fulfill the requirements of type $t_2$;
4. are assignable to variables of type $t_2$.

Example:
assign smaller type (fewer values) to larger type (more values)

```
    t_1    x;
    t_2    y;
    y = x;
```
Subtypes

On the arithmetic basic types `char`, `int`, `long`, etc. there exists a rich *subtype* hierarchy

Subtypes

$t_1 \leq t_2$, means that the values of type $t_1$

1. form a *subset* of the values of type $t_2$;
2. can be converted into a value of type $t_2$;
3. fulfill the requirements of type $t_2$;
4. are assignable to variables of type $t_2$.

Example:
assign smaller type (fewer values) to larger type (more values)

```c
int x;
double y;
y = x;
```
Example: Subtyping

Extending the subtype relationship to more complex types, observe:

```c
string extractInfo( struct { string info; } x) {
    return x.info;
}
```

- we want `extractInfo` to be applicable to all argument structures that return a `string` typed field for accessor `info`
- the idea of subtyping on values is related to subclasses
- we use deduction rules to describe when \( t_1 \leq t_2 \) should hold...
Rules for Well-Typedness of Subtyping

\[ t \leq t' \]
\[ s \ast t \ast \]
\[ A \triangleleft t \]
\[ \text{typedef } s A \]

\[
\text{struct } \{ s_1 \ a_1; \ldots \ s_j \ a_j; \} \quad \text{struct } \{ t_1 \ a_1; \ldots \ t_k \ a_k; \}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
& a_1 \\
& s_1 \ t_1 \\
& \ldots \\
& j \geq k \\
& s_k \ t_k \\
& a_k
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{struct } \{ \text{int } u, \text{int } v \} \quad x; \\
\text{struct } \{ \text{int } u \} \quad y; \\
y = x;
\]
Rules and Examples for Subtyping

\[ s_0 (s_1, \ldots, s_m) \leq t_0 (t_1, \ldots, t_m) \]

Examples:

- \texttt{struct \{ int a; int b; \}}
- \texttt{int (int)}
- \texttt{int (float)}
- \texttt{struct \{ float a; \}}
- \texttt{float (float)}
- \texttt{float (int)}
Examples:

\[
\text{struct } \{ \text{int } a; \text{ int } b; \} \\
\text{int } (\text{int}) \\
\text{int } (\text{float})
\]

\[
\text{struct } \{ \text{float } a; \} \\
\text{float } (\text{float}) \\
\text{float } (\text{int})
\]

Definition

Given two function types in subtype relation 
\( s_0(s_1, \ldots s_n) \leq t_0(t_1, \ldots t_n) \) then we have

- **co-variance** of the return type \( s_0 \leq t_0 \) and
- **contra-variance** of the arguments \( s_i \geq t_i \) für \( 1 < i \leq n \)
Rules and Examples for Subtyping

Definition
Given two function types in subtype relation
\( s_0(s_1, \ldots, s_n) \leq t_0(t_1, \ldots, t_n) \) then we have
- **co-variance** of the return type \( s_0 \leq t_0 \) and
- **contra-variance** of the arguments \( s_i \geq t_i \) für \( 1 < i \leq n \)

Examples:

\[
\text{struct } \{ \text{int } a; \text{ int } b; \} \quad \leq \quad \text{struct } \{ \text{float } a; \} \\
\text{int } (\text{int}) \quad \not\leq \quad \text{float } (\text{float}) \\
\text{int } (\text{float}) \quad \leq \quad \text{float } (\text{int})
\]
Subtypes: Application of Rules (I)

Check if $S_1 \leq R_1$:

$$
\begin{align*}
R_1 &= \text{struct } \{ \text{int } a; \ R_1 (R_1) f; \} \\
S_1 &= \text{struct } \{ \text{int } a; \ \text{int } b; \ S_1 (S_1) f; \} \\
R_2 &= \text{struct } \{ \text{int } a; \ R_2 (S_2) f; \} \\
S_2 &= \text{struct } \{ \text{int } a; \ \text{int } b; \ S_2 (R_2) f; \}
\end{align*}
$$
Subtypes: Application of Rules (II)

Check if $S_2 \leq S_1$:

$R_1 = \text{struct} \{ \text{int } a; \ R_1 (R_1) \ f; \}$

$S_1 = \text{struct} \{ \text{int } a; \ \text{int } b; \ S_1 (S_1) \ f; \}$

$R_2 = \text{struct} \{ \text{int } a; \ R_2 (S_2) \ f; \}$

$S_2 = \text{struct} \{ \text{int } a; \ \text{int } b; \ S_2 (R_2) \ f; \}$
Subtypes: Application of Rules (III)

Check if $S_2 \leq R_1$:

$R_1 = \text{struct \{int } a; R_1(R_1) f; \}\}$
$S_1 = \text{struct \{int } a; \text{int } b; S_1(S_1) f; \}\}$
$R_2 = \text{struct \{int } a; R_2(S_2) f; \}\}$
$S_2 = \text{struct \{int } a; \text{int } b; S_2(R_2) f; \}\}$
for presentational purposes, proof trees are often abbreviated by omitting deductions within the tree

structural sub-types are very powerful and can be quite intricate to understand

Java generalizes structs to objects/classes where a sub-class $A$ inheriting form base class $O$ is a subtype $A \leq O$

subtype relations between classes must be explicitly declared
Topic: Code Synthesis
Generating Code: Overview

We inductively generate instructions from the AST:

- there is a rule stating how to generate code for each non-terminal of the grammar
- the code is merely another attribute in the syntax tree
- code generation makes use of the already computed attributes
Generating Code: Overview

We inductively generate instructions from the AST:
- there is a rule stating how to generate code for each non-terminal of the grammar
- the code is merely another attribute in the syntax tree
- code generation makes use of the already computed attributes

In order to specify the code generation, we require
- a semantics of the language we are compiling (here: C standard)
- a semantics of the machine instructions
Generating Code: Overview

We inductively generate instructions from the AST:
- there is a rule stating how to generate code for each non-terminal of the grammar
- the code is merely another attribute in the syntax tree
- code generation makes use of the already computed attributes

In order to specify the code generation, we require
- a semantics of the language we are compiling (here: C standard)
- a semantics of the machine instructions

we commence by specifying machine instruction semantics
Chapter 1:
The Register C-Machine
The Register C-Machine (R-CMa)

We generate Code for the Register C-Machine. The Register C-Machine is a virtual machine (VM).

- there exists no processor that can execute its instructions
- . . . but we can build an interpreter for it
- we provide a visualization environment for the R-CMa
- the R-CMa has no double, float, char, short or long types
- the R-CMa has no instructions to communicate with the operating system
- the R-CMa has an unlimited supply of registers
The Register C-Machine (R-CMa)

We generate Code for the Register C-Machine. The Register C-Machine is a virtual machine (VM).

- there exists no processor that can execute its instructions
- . . . but we can build an interpreter for it
- we provide a visualization environment for the R-CMa
- the R-CMa has no **double**, **float**, **char**, **short** or **long** types
- the R-CMa has no instructions to communicate with the operating system
- the R-CMa has an unlimited supply of registers

The R-CMa is more realistic than it may seem:

- the mentioned restrictions can easily be lifted
- the *Dalvik VM* or the *LLVM* are similar to the R-CMa
- an interpreter of R-CMa can run on any platform
Virtual Machines

A virtual machine has the following ingredients:

- any virtual machine provides a set of instructions
- instructions are executed on virtual hardware
- the virtual hardware is a collection of data structures that is accessed and modified by the VM instructions
- ... and also by other components of the run-time system, namely functions that go beyond the instruction semantics
- the interpreter is part of the run-time system
Components of a Virtual Machine

Consider Java as an example:

A virtual machine such as the Dalvik VM has the following structure:

- **S**: the data store – a memory region in which cells can be stored in LIFO order → stack.
- **SP**: (≡ stack pointer) pointer to the last used cell in S
- beyond S follows the memory containing the heap
Components of a Virtual Machine

Consider Java as an example:

- **C**: the memory storing code. Each cell of C holds exactly one virtual instruction and C can only be read.
- **S**: the data store – a memory region in which cells can be stored in LIFO order, which is a stack.
- **SP**: pointer to the last used cell in S. Beyond S follows the memory containing the heap.
- **PC**: address of the instruction that is to be executed next. PC contains 0 initially.

A virtual machine such as the Dalvik VM has the following structure:
Executing a Program

- the machine loads an instruction from \( C[PC] \) into the instruction register \( IR \) in order to execute it
- before evaluating the instruction, the \( PC \) is incremented by one

\[
\text{while} \ (\text{true}) \ {\{} \\
\quad IR = C[PC]; \ PC++; \\
\quad \text{execute} \ (IR); \\
\quad {\}}
\]

- node: the \( PC \) must be incremented before the execution, since an instruction may modify the \( PC \)
- the loop is exited by evaluating a \textbf{halt} instruction that returns directly to the operating system
Chapter 2:
Generating Code for the Register C-Machine
Task: evaluate the expression \((1 + 7) \times 3\)
that is, generate an instruction sequence that
- computes the value of the expression and
- keeps its value accessible in a reproducible way
Task: evaluate the expression \((1 + 7) \times 3\) that is, generate an instruction sequence that
- computes the value of the expression and
- keeps its value accessible in a reproducible way

Idea:
- first compute the value of the sub-expressions
- store the intermediate result in a temporary register
- apply the operator
- loop
Principles of the R-CMa

The R-CMa is composed of a stack, heap and a code segment, just like the JVM; it additionally has register sets:

- **local** registers are $R_1, R_2, \ldots R_i, \ldots$
- **global** register are $R_0, R_{-1}, \ldots R_j, \ldots$
The Register Sets of the R-CMa

The two register sets have the following purpose:

1. the *local* registers $R_i$
   - save temporary results
   - store the contents of local variables of a function
   - can efficiently be stored and restored from the stack
The Register Sets of the R-CMа

The two register sets have the following purpose:

1. **the local registers** $R_i$
   - save temporary results
   - store the contents of local variables of a function
   - can efficiently be stored and restored from the stack

2. **the global registers** $R_i$
   - save the parameters of a function
   - store the result of a function

Note: for now, we only use registers to store temporary computations.
The Register Sets of the R-CMa

The two register sets have the following purpose:

1. the *local* registers \( R_i \)
   - save temporary results
   - store the contents of local variables of a function
   - can efficiently be stored and restored from the stack

2. the *global* registers \( R_i \)
   - save the parameters of a function
   - store the result of a function

Note:
for now, we only use registers to store temporary computations
The Register Sets of the R-CMa

The two register sets have the following purpose:

1. the *local* registers $R_i$
   - save temporary results
   - store the contents of local variables of a function
   - can efficiently be stored and restored from the stack

2. the *global* registers $R_i$
   - save the parameters of a function
   - store the result of a function

Note:
for now, we only use registers to store temporary computations

Idea for the translation: use a register counter $i$:
- registers $R_j$ with $j < i$ are *in use*
- registers $R_j$ with $j \geq i$ are *available*
Translation of Simple Expressions

Using variables stored in registers; loading constants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Semantics</th>
<th>Intuition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loadc $R_i c$</td>
<td>$R_i = c$</td>
<td>load constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move $R_i R_j$</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j$</td>
<td>copy $R_j$ to $R_i$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Translation of Simple Expressions

Using variables stored in registers; loading constants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>instruction</th>
<th>semantics</th>
<th>intuition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loadc $R_i$ $c$</td>
<td>$R_i = c$</td>
<td>load constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move $R_i$ $R_j$</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j$</td>
<td>copy $R_j$ to $R_i$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We define the following translation schema (with $\rho x = a$):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}_R^i c \, \rho &= \text{loadc } R_i \, c \\
\text{code}_R^i x \, \rho &= \text{move } R_i \, R_a \\
\text{code}_R^i x = e \, \rho &= \text{code}_R^i e \, \rho \\
\text{code}_R^i x = e \, \rho &= \text{move } R_a \, R_i
\end{align*}
\]
Translation of Expressions

Let \( \text{op} = \{ \text{add, sub, div, mul, mod, le, gr, eq, leq, geq, and, or} \} \).

The R-CMa provides an instruction for each operator \( \text{op} \).

\[
\text{op } R_i \ R_j \ R_k
\]

where \( R_i \) is the target register, \( R_j \) the first and \( R_k \) the second argument.

Correspondingly, we generate code as follows:

\[
\text{code}^i_{R} \ e_1 \ \text{op} \ e_2 \ \rho = \text{code}^i_{R} \ e_1 \ \rho \ \text{code}^{i+1}_{R} \ e_2 \ \rho \ \text{op } R_i \ R_i \ R_{i+1}
\]
Translation of Expressions

Let \( \text{op} = \{ \text{add, sub, div, mul, mod, le, gr, eq, leq, geq, and, or} \} \). The R-CMa provides an instruction for each operator \( \text{op} \).

\[
\text{op } R_i R_j R_k
\]

where \( R_i \) is the target register, \( R_j \) the first and \( R_k \) the second argument.

Correspondingly, we generate code as follows:

\[
\text{code}_R^i e_1 \text{ op } e_2 \rho = \text{code}_R^i e_1 \rho \quad \text{code}_R^{i+1} e_2 \rho \quad \text{op } R_i R_i R_{i+1}
\]

Example: Translate \( 3 \times 4 \) with \( i = 4 \):

\[
\text{code}_R^4 3 \times 4 \rho = \text{code}_R^4 3 \rho \quad \text{code}_R^5 4 \rho \quad \text{mul } R_4 R_4 R_5
\]
Translation of Expressions

Let $\text{op} = \{\text{add, sub, div, mul, mod, le, gr, eq, leq, geq, and, or}\}$. The R-CMa provides an instruction for each operator $\text{op}$.

$$ \text{op} \; R_i \; R_j \; R_k $$

where $R_i$ is the target register, $R_j$ the first and $R_k$ the second argument.

Correspondingly, we generate code as follows:

$$ \text{code}_R^i \; e_1 \; \text{op} \; e_2 \; \rho = \text{code}_R^i \; e_1 \; \rho $$

$$ \text{code}_{i+1}^i \; e_2 \; \rho \; \text{op} \; R_i \; R_i \; R_{i+1} $$

Example: Translate $3 \times 4$ with $i = 4$:

$$ \text{code}_R^4 \; 3 \times 4 \; \rho = \text{loadc} \; R_4 \; 3 $$

$$ \text{loadc} \; R_5 \; 4 $$

$$ \text{mul} \; R_4 \; R_4 \; R_5 $$
Managing Temporary Registers

Observe that temporary registers are re-used: translate $3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4$ with $t = 4$:

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{code}_R^4 & \quad 3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
& = \quad \text{code}_R^4 \quad 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \text{code}_R^5 \quad 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \text{add} \quad R_4 \quad R_4 \quad R_5
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{code}_R^i & \quad 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
& = \quad \text{loadc} \quad R_i \quad 3 \\
& \quad \text{loadc} \quad R_{i+1} \quad 4 \\
& \quad \text{mul} \quad R_i \quad R_i \quad R_{i+1}
\end{align*}
$$

we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{code}_R^4 & \quad 3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
& = \\
&
\end{align*}
$$
Managing Temporary Registers

Observe that temporary registers are re-used: translate $3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4$ with $t = 4$:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^4_R 3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4 \quad \rho &= \quad \text{code}^4_R 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
&\quad \text{code}^5_R 3 \times 4 \quad \rho \\
&\quad \text{add} R_4 R_4 R_5
\end{align*}
\]

where

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^i_R 3 \times 4 \quad \rho &= \quad \text{loadc} R_i 3 \\
&\quad \text{loadc} R_{i+1} 4 \\
&\quad \text{mul} R_i R_i R_{i+1}
\end{align*}
\]

we obtain

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^4_R 3 \times 4 + 3 \times 4 \quad \rho &= \quad \text{loadc} R_4 3 \\
&\quad \text{loadc} R_5 4 \\
&\quad \text{mul} R_4 R_4 R_5 \\
&\quad \text{loadc} R_5 3 \\
&\quad \text{loadc} R_6 4 \\
&\quad \text{mul} R_5 R_5 R_6 \\
&\quad \text{add} R_4 R_4 R_5
\end{align*}
\]
Semantics of Operators

The operators have the following semantics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j + R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j - R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j / R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mul</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j \ast R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{signum}(R_k) \cdot k$ with $</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j &lt; R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gr</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j &gt; R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eq</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j = R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leq</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j \leq R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geq</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j \geq R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j &amp; R_k$ // bit-wise and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j \mid R_k$ // bit-wise or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Semantics of Operators

The operators have the following semantics:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Equation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j + R_k$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = add $R_j$ and $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j - R_k$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = sub $R_j$ from $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j / R_k$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = div $R_j$ by $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mul</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j * R_k$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = mul $R_j$ by $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mod</td>
<td>$R_i = signum(R_k) \cdot k$ with $</td>
<td>R_j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>le</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j &lt; R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = le $R_j$ and $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gr</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j &gt; R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = gr $R_j$ from $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eq</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j = R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = eq $R_j$ and $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leq</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j \leq R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = leq $R_j$ and $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geq</td>
<td>$R_i = \text{if } R_j \geq R_k \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = geq $R_j$ and $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j &amp; R_k$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = and $R_j$ and $R_k$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>$R_i = R_j \mid R_k$</td>
<td>$R_i$ = or $R_j$ or $R_k$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** all registers and memory cells contain operands in $\mathbb{Z}$
Translation of Unary Operators

Unary operators $\text{op} = \{\text{neg}, \text{not}\}$ take only two registers:

$\text{code}_R^i \text{ op e } \rho = \text{code}_R^i \text{ e } \rho$

$\text{op } R_i R_i$
Translation of Unary Operators

Unary operators $op = \{ neg, not \}$ take only two registers:

$$\text{code}_R^i \ op \ e \ \rho = \text{code}_R^i \ e \ \rho$$

$$op \ R_i \ R_i$$

Note: We use the same register.
Translation of Unary Operators

Unary operators $\text{op} = \{\text{neg, not}\}$ take only two registers:

\[
\text{code}_R^i \text{ op e } \rho = \text{code}_R^i \text{ e } \rho \\
\text{op } R_i R_i
\]

Note: We use the same register.

Example: Translate $-4$ into $R_5$:

\[
\text{code}_R^5 -4 \rho = \text{code}_R^5 4 \rho \\
\neg R_5 R_5
\]
Translation of Unary Operators

Unary operators \( \text{op} = \{\text{neg}, \text{not}\} \) take only two registers:

\[
\text{code}^i_R \ \text{op} \ e \ \rho = \text{code}^i_R \ e \ \rho \\
\text{op} \ R_i \ R_i
\]

Note: We use the same register.

Example: Translate \(-4\) into \(R_5\):

\[
\text{code}^5_R \ -4 \ \rho = \text{loadc} \ R_5 \ 4 \\
\text{neg} \ R_5 \ R_5
\]
Translation of Unary Operators

Unary operators \( \text{op} = \{\text{neg}, \text{not}\} \) take only two registers:

\[
\text{code}_R^i \text{ op } e \rho = \text{code}_R^i e \rho \\
\text{op } R_i R_i
\]

Note: We use the same register.

Example: Translate \(-4\) into \(R_5\):

\[
\text{code}_R^5 -4 \rho = \text{loadc } R_5 4 \\
\text{neg } R_5 R_5
\]

The operators have the following semantics:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{not } R_i R_j & \quad R_i \leftarrow \text{if } R_j = 0 \text{ then } 1 \text{ else } 0 \\
\text{neg } R_i R_j & \quad R_i \leftarrow -R_j
\end{align*}
\]
Applying Translation Schema for Expressions

Suppose the following function is given:

```c
void f(void) {
    int x, y, z;
    x = y + z * 3;
}
```

- Let \( \rho = \{ x \mapsto 1, y \mapsto 2, z \mapsto 3 \} \) be the address environment.
- Let \( R_4 \) be the first free register, that is, \( i = 4 \).

\[
\text{code}^4 \ x = y + z \times 3 \ \rho \quad = \quad \text{code}^4 \ y + z \times 3 \ \rho \\
\text{move} \ R_1 \ R_4
\]
Applying Translation Schema for Expressions

Suppose the following function is given:

```c
void f(void) {
    int x, y, z;
    x = y + z * 3;
}
```

- Let \( \rho = \{ x \mapsto 1, y \mapsto 2, z \mapsto 3 \} \) be the address environment.
- Let \( R_4 \) be the first free register, that is, \( i = 4 \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}_4^{\rho} x &= y + z \ast 3, \\
\text{move } R_1 &\rightarrow R_4 \\
\text{code}_5^{\rho} y + z \ast 3 &= \text{move } R_4 \rightarrow R_2 \\
\text{move } R_4 &\rightarrow R_5 \\
\text{code}_4^{\rho} y + z \ast 3 &= \text{load } R_6 \\
\text{mul } R_5 &\rightarrow R_6 \\
\text{add } R_4 &\rightarrow R_4 \rightarrow R_5 \\
\text{move } R_1 &\rightarrow R_4
\end{align*}
\]
Applying Translation Schema for Expressions

Suppose the following function is given:

```c
void f(void) {
    int x, y, z;
    x = y + z * 3;
}
```

- Let \( \rho = \{ x \mapsto 1, y \mapsto 2, z \mapsto 3 \} \) be the address environment.
- Let \( R_4 \) be the first free register, that is, \( i = 4 \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^4_{R} \ x = y + z \times 3 \ \rho & = \text{code}^4_{R} \ y + z \times 3 \ \rho \\
\text{move} \ R_1 \ R_4 & \\
\text{move} \ R_4 \ R_2 & \\
\text{add} \ R_4 \ R_4 \ R_5 & \\
\text{move} \ R_5 \ R_3 & \\
\text{mul} \ R_5 \ R_5 \ R_6 &
\end{align*}
\]
Applying Translation Schema for Expressions

Suppose the following function is given:

```c
void f(void) {
    int x, y, z;
    x = y + z * 3;
}
```

- Let \( \rho = \{x \mapsto 1, y \mapsto 2, z \mapsto 3\} \) be the address environment.
- Let \( R_4 \) be the first free register, that is, \( i = 4 \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^4_{\mathcal{R}} & \quad x = y + z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{code}^4_{\mathcal{R}} \quad y + z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{move} \quad R_1 \quad R_4 \\
\text{code}^4_{\mathcal{R}} & \quad y + z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{move} \quad R_4 \quad R_2 \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{code}^5_{\mathcal{R}} \quad z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{add} \quad R_4 \quad R_4 \quad R_5 \\
\text{code}^5_{\mathcal{R}} & \quad z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{move} \quad R_5 \quad R_3 \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{code}^6_{\mathcal{R}} \quad 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{mul} \quad R_5 \quad R_5 \quad R_6 \\
\text{code}^6_{\mathcal{R}} & \quad 3 \quad \rho \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \quad \text{loadc} \quad R_6 \quad 3
\end{align*}
\]
Applying Translation Schema for Expressions

Suppose the following function is given:

```c
void f(void) {
    int x, y, z;
    x = y + z * 3;
}
```

- Let \( \rho = \{ x \mapsto 1, y \mapsto 2, z \mapsto 3 \} \) be the address environment.
- Let \( R_4 \) be the first free register, that is, \( i = 4 \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^4_{R_4} \ x & = y + z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
\text{code}^5_{R_4} \ y & + z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
\text{code}^6_{R_4} \ z \times 3 \quad \rho \\
\sim \text{the assignment } x & = y + z \times 3 \text{ is translated as}
\end{align*}
\]

move \( R_4 \rightarrow R_1 \) 
move \( R_4 \rightarrow R_2 \) 
move \( R_5 \rightarrow R_3 \) 
loadc \( R_6 \rightarrow 3 \) 
mul \( R_5 \rightarrow R_5 \times R_6 \) 
add \( R_4 \rightarrow R_4 + R_5 \) 
move \( R_1 \rightarrow R_4 \)
Chapter 3:
Statements and Control Structures
About Statements and Expressions

General idea for translation:
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}_i^s & \quad \rho & : & \text{generate code for statement } s \\
\text{code}_R^i & \quad e & \rho & : \text{generate code for expression } e \text{ into } R_i
\end{align*}
\]
Throughout: \( i, i + 1, \ldots \) are free (unused) registers

For an expression \( x = e \) with \( \rho_x = a \) we defined:
\[
\text{code}_i^x R \xleftarrow{=} \text{code}_i^e \rho
\]
However, \( x = e \); is also an expression statement:

Define:
\[
\text{code}_i^e 1 \xleftarrow{=} \text{code}_i^e 2 \rho
\]
The temporary register \( R_i \) is ignored here. More general:
\[
\text{code}_i^e ; \rho \xleftarrow{=} \text{code}_i^e \rho
\]
Observation: the assignment to \( e_1 \) is a side effect of the evaluating the expression \( e_1 = e_2 \).
About Statements and Expressions

General idea for translation:

- \( \text{code}^i s \rho \): generate code for statement \( s \)
- \( \text{code}^i e \rho \): generate code for expression \( e \) into \( R_i \)

Throughout: \( i, i + 1, \ldots \) are free (unused) registers

For an expression \( x = e \) with \( \rho x = a \) we defined:

\[
\text{code}^{i} x = e \rho = \text{code}^{i} e \rho \\
\text{move } R_a R_i
\]

However, \( x = e; \) is also an expression statement:
About Statements and Expressions

General idea for translation:
\[
\text{code}^i_s \rho \quad : \quad \text{generate code for statement } s \\
\text{code}^i_R e \rho \quad : \quad \text{generate code for expression } e \text{ into } R_i
\]
Throughout: \( i, i + 1, \ldots \) are free (unused) registers

For an expression \( x = e \) with \( \rho x = a \) we defined:
\[
\text{code}^i_R x = e \rho = \text{code}^i_R e \rho \\
\text{move } R_a R_i
\]

However, \( x = e; \) is also an expression statement:

\[
\text{Define:}
\]
\[
\text{code}^i e_1 = e_2; \rho = \text{code}^i_R e_1 = e_2 \rho
\]

The temporary register \( R_i \) is ignored here. More general:
\[
\text{code}^i e; \rho = \text{code}^i_R e \rho
\]
About Statements and Expressions

General idea for translation:
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^i_s \ s \ \rho & : \text{ generate code for statement } s \\
\text{code}^i_R \ e \ \rho & : \text{ generate code for expression } e \text{ into } R_i
\end{align*}
\]
Throughout: \( i, i+1, \ldots \) are free (unused) registers

For an expression \( x = e \) with \( \rho \ x = a \) we defined:

\[
\text{code}^i_R \ x = e \ \rho \ = \ \text{code}^i_R \ e \ \rho \\
\text{move } R_a \ R_i
\]

However, \( x = e; \) is also an expression statement:

- Define:

\[
\text{code}^i \ e_1 = e_2; \ \rho \ = \ \text{code}^i_R \ e_1 = e_2 \ \rho
\]

The temporary register \( R_i \) is ignored here. More general:

\[
\text{code}^i \ e; \ \rho = \text{code}^i_R \ e \ \rho
\]

- Observation: the assignment to \( e_1 \) is a side effect of the evaluating the expression \( e_1 = e_2 \).
The code for a sequence of statements is the concatenation of the instructions for each statement in that sequence:

\[
\text{code}^i (s \, ss) \, \rho = \text{code}^i s \, \rho \\
\text{code}^i ss \, \rho
\]

\[
\text{code}^i \varepsilon \, \rho = \quad // \quad \text{empty sequence of instructions}
\]

Note here: \( s \) is a statement, \( ss \) is a sequence of statements
In order to diverge from the linear sequence of execution, we need *jumps*:

```plaintext
PC = A;
```
Conditional Jumps

A conditional jump branches depending on the value in $R_i$:

$$\text{jumpz } R_i \ A$$

if ($R_i == 0$) PC = A;
Simple Conditional

We first consider \( s \equiv \textbf{if} \ (c) \ ss \). …and present a translation without basic blocks.

Idea:

- emit the code of \( c \) and \( ss \) in sequence
- insert a jump instruction in-between, so that correct control flow is ensured

\[
\text{code}_i^s \rho = \text{code}_R^i c \rho \text{jumpz } R_i A \\
\text{code}_i^s ss \rho
\]

A : …
Translation of $\text{if } (c) \text{ tt else } ee$.

$$\text{code}^i \text{ if}(c) \text{ tt else } ee \; \rho =\
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^i_{R} \; c \; \rho \\
\text{jumpz } \; R_i \; A \\
\text{code}^i \; \text{tt } \; \rho \\
\text{jump } \; B \\
A : \; \text{code}^i \; \text{ee } \; \rho \\
B : \\
\end{align*}$$
Example for if-statement

Let \( \rho = \{x \mapsto 4, y \mapsto 7\} \) and let \( s \) be the statement

```c
if (x>y) {
    x = x - y;  /* (i) */
} else {
    y = y - x;  /* (ii) */
}
```

Then \( \text{code}^i s \rho \) yields:
Example for if-statement

Let $\rho = \{x \mapsto 4, y \mapsto 7\}$ and let $s$ be the statement

```plaintext
if (x>y) {
    x = x - y;  /* (i) */
} else {
    y = y - x;  /* (ii) */
}
```

Then code $^i s \rho$ yields:

(i)  

- move $R_i R_4$
- move $R_{i+1} R_7$
- gr $R_i R_i R_{i+1}$
- jumpz $R_i A$

(ii) 

- move $R_i R_4$
- move $R_{i+1} R_7$
- sub $R_i R_i R_{i+1}$
- move $R_4 R_i$
- jump $B$

(iii) 

- $A:$ move $R_i R_7$
- move $R_{i+1} R_4$
- sub $R_i R_i R_{i+1}$
- move $R_7 R_i$
- $B:$
We only consider the loop \( s \equiv \textbf{while} (e) s' \). For this statement we define:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{code}^i \textbf{while}(e) s \, \rho &= A : \begin{align*}
\text{code}^i_R \, e \, \rho \\
\text{jumpz} \, R_i \, B \\
\text{code}^i \, s \, \rho \\
\text{jump} \, A \\
\end{align*} \\
B : \begin{align*}
\text{jump} \\
\text{code for } s' \\
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
\]
Example: Translation of Loops

Let \( \rho = \{ a \mapsto 7, b \mapsto 8, c \mapsto 9 \} \) and let \( s \) be the statement:

\[
\textbf{while } (a>0) \{ \hspace{1em} /* (i) */ \\
c = c + 1; \hspace{1em} /* (ii) */ \\
a = a - b; \hspace{1em} /* (iii) */ 
\}
\]

Then code\textsuperscript{\textit{i}} \( s \rho \) evaluates to:
Example: Translation of Loops

Let \( \rho = \{ a \mapsto 7, b \mapsto 8, c \mapsto 9 \} \) and let \( s \) be the statement:

\[
\textbf{while} \ (a>0) \ {\{} \ \
\text{/* (i) */} \\
c = c + 1; \quad /\!/ (ii) */ \\
a = a - b; \quad /\!/ (iii) */ \\
{\}}
\]

Then \( \text{code}^i s \rho \) evaluates to:

\[
\begin{align*}
(i) & : \text{move } R_i \ R_7 \\
     & \text{loadc } R_{i+1} \ 0 \\
     & \text{gr } R_i \ R_i \ R_{i+1} \\
     & \text{jumpz } R_i \ B \\
(ii) & : \text{move } R_i \ R_9 \\
     & \text{loadc } R_{i+1} \ 1 \\
     & \text{add } R_i \ R_i \ R_{i+1} \\
     & \text{move } R_9 \ R_i \\
(iii) & : \text{move } R_i \ R_7 \\
      & \text{move } R_{i+1} \ R_8 \\
      & \text{sub } R_i \ R_i \ R_{i+1} \\
      & \text{move } R_7 \ R_i \\
      & \text{jump } A \\
      & B : \end{align*}
\]
for-Loops

The for-loop \( s \equiv \textbf{for} (e_1; e_2; e_3) \ s' \) is equivalent to the statement sequence \( e_1; \ \textbf{while} \ (e_2) \ \{s' \ e_3; \} \) — as long as \( s' \) does not contain a \textbf{continue} statement.

Thus, we translate:

\[
\text{code}^i \text{for}(e_1; e_2; e_3) \ s \ \rho = \ \text{code}^i_\rho \ e_1 \ \rho \\
A : \ \text{code}^i_\rho \ e_2 \ \rho \\
\text{jumpz} \ R_i \ B \\
\text{code}^i \ s \ \rho \\
\text{code}^i_\rho \ e_3 \ \rho \\
\text{jump} \ A \\
B : 
\]
The switch-Statement

Idea:

• Suppose choosing from multiple options in constant time if possible
• use a jump table that, at the $i$th position, holds a jump to the $i$th alternative
• in order to realize this idea, we need an indirect jump instruction
The switch-Statement

Idea:
- Suppose choosing from multiple options in *constant time* if possible
- use a *jump table* that, at the $i$th position, holds a jump to the $i$th alternative
- in order to realize this idea, we need an *indirect jump* instruction

$$PC = A + R_i;$$
Consecutive Alternatives

Let switch $s$ be given with $k$ consecutive case alternatives:

```java
switch (e) {
    case 0: $s_0$; break;
    :
    case $k - 1$: $s_{k-1}$; break;
    default: $s_k$; break;
}
```

Define code $i s \rho$ as follows:

`check $i_0$ $kB$ $A_0$`: code $i s 0 \rho$ jump $C$ ...

`A $k$`: code $i s k \rho$ jump $C$ $B$:

`check $i luB$` checks if $l \leq R_i$ holds and jumps accordingly.
Consecutive Alternatives

Let \texttt{switch} \ s \ be \ given \ with \ \(k\) \ consecutive \ \texttt{case} \ alternatives:

\begin{verbatim}
switch (e) {
   case 0: s_0; break;
   :
   case k-1: s_{k-1}; break;
   default: s_k; break;
}
\end{verbatim}

Define \texttt{code}^i \ s \ \rho \ as \ follows:

\[
\text{code}^i \ s \ \rho = \text{code}^i_R \ e \ \rho
\]

\begin{align*}
\text{check}^i 0 k \ B & \quad B : \ \text{jump} \ A_0 \\
A_0 & : \ \text{code}^i s_0 \ \rho \quad \text{jump} \ C \\
\vdots & \quad \vdots
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
A_k & : \ \text{code}^i s_k \ \rho
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{check}^i l uB & \text{ checks if } l \leq R_i \ \rho \ \text{holds and jumps accordingly.}
\end{align*}
Consecutive Alternatives

Let \texttt{switch} \( s \) be given with \( k \) consecutive \texttt{case} alternatives:

\[
\texttt{switch} \ (e) \ { \\
\text{case} \ 0: \ s_0; \ \text{break}; \\
\vdots \\
\text{case} \ k-1: \ s_{k-1}; \ \text{break}; \\
\text{default}: \ s_k; \ \text{break}; \\
}
\]

Define \( \text{code}^i s \rho \) as follows:

\[
\text{code}^i s \rho = \text{code}^i e \rho \\
\text{check}^i 0 k B \\
A_0: \ \text{code}^i s_0 \rho \\
\quad \text{jump} C \\
\vdots \\
A_k: \ \text{code}^i s_k \rho \\
\quad \text{jump} C
\]

\( \text{check}^i l u B \) checks if \( l \leq R_i < u \) holds and jumps accordingly.
Translation of the \textit{check} \textsuperscript{i} Macro

The macro \textit{check} \textsuperscript{i} \ l \ u \ B checks if \( l \leq R_i < u \). Let \( k = u - l \).

- if \( l \leq R_i < u \) it jumps to \( B + R_i - l \)
- if \( R_i < l \) or \( R_i \geq u \) it jumps to \( A_k \)

\[
\begin{align*}
B : & \quad \text{jump } A_0 \\
: & \quad : \\
: & \quad \text{jump } A_k \\
C : &
\end{align*}
\]
Translation of the $\text{check}^i$ Macro

The macro $\text{check}^i l u B$ checks if $l \leq R_i < u$. Let $k = u - l$.

- if $l \leq R_i < u$ it jumps to $B + R_i - l$
- if $R_i < l$ or $R_i \geq u$ it jumps to $A_k$

we define:

$$
\text{check}^i l u B = \begin{align*}
&\text{loadc } R_{i+1} l \\
&\text{geq } R_{i+2} R_i R_{i+1} \\
&\text{jumpz } R_{i+2} E \\
&\text{sub } R_i R_i R_{i+1} \\
&\text{loadc } R_{i+1} u \\
&\text{geq } R_{i+2} R_i R_{i+1} \\
&\text{jumpz } R_{i+2} D \\
&\text{loadc } R_i u - l \\
&\text{jumi } R_i B \\
&\text{jumpe } R_i u - l \\
&\text{jumpi } R_i B \\
B : \text{ jump } A_0 \\
: \text{ :} \\
C : \text{ jump } A_k
\end{align*}
$$
Translation of the *check*^\text{i}* Macro

The macro *check*^\text{i}* \(l \ u \ B\) checks if \(l \leq R_i < u\). Let \(k = u - l\).

- if \(l \leq R_i < u\) it jumps to \(B + R_i - l\)
- if \(R_i < l\) or \(R_i \geq u\) it jumps to \(A_k\)

we define:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{check}^i \ l \ u \ B & = \text{loadc} \ R_{i+1} \ l \\
& \text{geq} \ R_{i+2} \ R_i \ R_{i+1} \\
& \text{jumpz} \ R_{i+2} \ E \\
& \text{sub} \ R_i \ R_i \ R_{i+1} \\
& \text{loadc} \ R_{i+1} \ u \\
& \text{geq} \ R_{i+2} \ R_i \ R_{i+1} \\
& \text{jumpz} \ R_{i+2} \ D \\
E & : \text{loadc} \ R_i \ u - l \\
D & : \text{jumpi} \ R_i \ B \\
B & : \text{jump} \ A_0 \\
& \vdots \\
& \text{jump} \ A_k \\
C & : \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Note:** a jump *jumpi* \(R_i \ B* with \(R_i = u\) winds up at \(B + u\), the default case
Improvements for Jump Tables

This translation is only suitable for *certain* switch-statement.

- In case the table starts with 0 instead of $u$ we don’t need to subtract it from $e$ before we use it as index.
- If the value of $e$ is *guaranteed* to be in the interval $[l, u]$, we can omit *check*.
General translation of switch-Statements

In general, the values of the various cases may be far apart:

- generate an `if`-ladder, that is, a sequence of `if`-statements
- for \( n \) cases, an `if`-cascade (tree of conditionals) can be generated \( \sim O(\log n) \) tests
- if the sequence of numbers has small gaps \( (\leq 3) \), a jump table may be smaller and faster
- one could generate several jump tables, one for each sets of consecutive cases
- an `if` cascade can be re-arranged by using information from *profiling*, so that paths executed more frequently require fewer tests
Chapter 4:
Functions
Ingredients of a Function

The definition of a function consists of

- a **name** with which it can be called;
- a specification of its **formal parameters**;
- possibly a **result type**;
- a sequence of **statements**.

In C we have:

\[
\text{code}^i_R \ f \ \rho = \ \text{loadc} \ R_i _f \ \text{with} _f \text{starting address of } f
\]

Observe:

- function names must have an address assigned to them
- since the size of functions is unknown before they are translated, the addresses of forward-declared functions must be inserted later
Memory Management in Functions

```
int fac(int x) {
    if (x<=0) return 1;
    else return x*fac(x-1);
}

int main(void) {
    int n;
    n = fac(2) + fac(1);
    printf("%d", n);
}
```

At run-time several instances may be active, that is, the function has been called but has not yet returned. The recursion tree in the example:
Memory Management in Function Variables

The formal parameters and the local variables of the various instances of a function must be kept separate.

Idea for implementing functions:

- set up a region of memory each time it is called
- in sequential programs this memory region can be allocated on the stack
- thus, each instance of a function has its own region on the stack
- these regions are called stack frames
Organization of a Stack Frame

- **Stack** representation: grows upwards
- **SP** points to the last used stack cell

```
  SP  --
    |
  ---
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
    |
Organization of a Stack Frame

- **stack** representation: grows upwards
- **SP** points to the last used stack cell

\[
\text{FP} \equiv \text{frame pointer}: \text{points to the last organizational cell}
\]

- Used to recover the previously active stack frame
Split of Obligations

Definition

Let \( f \) be the current function that calls a function \( g \).
- \( f \) is dubbed \textit{caller}
- \( g \) is dubbed \textit{callee}

The code for managing function calls has to be split between caller and callee. This split cannot be done arbitrarily since some information is only known in that caller or only in the callee.

Observation:

The space requirement for parameters is only known by the caller: Example: \texttt{printf}
Principle of Function Call and Return

actions taken on **entering** $g$:

1. compute the start address of $g$
2. compute actual parameters in globals
3. backup of **caller**-save registers
4. backup of FP
5. set the new FP
6. back up of PC and jump to the beginning of $g$
7. copy actual params to locals

actions taken on **leaving** $g$:

1. compute the result into $R_0$
2. restore FP, SP
3. return to the call site in $f$, that is, restore PC
4. restore the **caller**-save registers

{ \text{saveloc} \quad \text{mark} \quad \text{are in } f }\quad \{ \text{call} \quad \{ \text{...} \quad \text{is in } g \} \}

\{ \text{return} \quad \{ \text{restoreloc} \quad \text{are in } g \} \quad \text{is in } f \}
Managing Registers during Function Calls

The two register sets (global and local) are used as follows:

- automatic variables live in *local* registers \( R_i \)
- intermediate results also live in *local* registers \( R_i \)
- parameters live in *global* registers \( R_i \) (with \( i \leq 0 \))
- global variables:
Managing Registers during Function Calls

The two register sets (global and local) are used as follows:

- automatic variables live in \textit{local} registers $R_i$
- intermediate results also live in \textit{local} registers $R_i$
- parameters live in \textit{global} registers $R_i$ (with $i \leq 0$)
- global variables: let’s suppose there are none

convention:
Managing Registers during Function Calls

The two register sets (global and local) are used as follows:

- automatic variables live in *local* registers $R_i$
- intermediate results also live in *local* registers $R_i$
- parameters live in *global* registers $R_i$ (with $i \leq 0$)
- global variables: let’s suppose there are none

convention:

- the $i$ th argument of a function is passed in register $R_{-i}$
- the result of a function is stored in $R_0$
- local registers are saved before calling a function
Managing Registers during Function Calls

The two register sets (global and local) are used as follows:
- automatic variables live in \( \textit{local} \) registers \( R_i \)
- intermediate results also live in \( \textit{local} \) registers \( R_i \)
- parameters live in \( \textit{global} \) registers \( R_i \) (with \( i \leq 0 \))
- global variables: let’s suppose there are none

convention:
- the \( i \) th argument of a function is passed in register \( R_{-i} \)
- the result of a function is stored in \( R_0 \)
- local registers are saved before calling a function

Definition

Let \( f \) be a function that calls \( g \). A register \( R_i \) is called
- \( \textit{caller-saved} \) if \( f \) backs up \( R_i \) and \( g \) may overwrite it
- \( \textit{callee-saved} \) if \( f \) does not back up \( R_i \), and \( g \) must restore it before returning
Translation of Function Calls

A function call $g(e_1, \ldots, e_n)$ is translated as follows:

$$\text{code}^i_R \ g(e_1, \ldots, e_n) \ \rho = \ \text{code}^i_R \ g \ \rho$$

$$\text{code}^{i+1}_R \ e_1 \ \rho$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\text{code}^{i+n}_R \ e_n \ \rho$$

move $R_{i-1} \ R_{i+1}$

$$\vdots$$

move $R_{i-n} \ R_{i+n}$

saveloc $R_1 \ R_{i-1}$

mark

call $R_i$

restoreloc $R_1 \ R_{i-1}$

move $R_i \ R_0$
Translation of Function Calls

A function call $g(e_1, \ldots, e_n)$ is translated as follows:

$$\text{code}^i_R \ g(e_1, \ldots, e_n) \ \rho = \ \text{code}^i_R \ g \ \rho$$

$$\text{code}^i_{R+1} \ e_1 \ \rho$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\text{code}^{i+n}_R \ e_n \ \rho$$

move $R_{i-1} \ R_{i+1}$

$$\vdots$$

move $R_{i-n} \ R_{i+n}$

saveloc $R_1 \ R_{i-1}$

mark

call $R_i$

restoreloc $R_1 \ R_{i-1}$

move $R_i \ R_0$

New instructions:

- **saveloc** $R_i \ R_j$ pushes the registers $R_i, R_{i+1} \ldots R_j$ onto the stack
- **mark** backs up the organizational cells
- **call** $R_i$ calls the function at the address in $R_i$
- **restoreloc** $R_i \ R_j$ pops $R_j, R_{j-1}, \ldots R_i$ off the stack
The instruction **mark** allocates stack space for the return value and the organizational cells and backs up **FP**.

\[
\begin{align*}
S[SP+1] &= FP; \\
SP &= SP + 1;
\end{align*}
\]
Calling a Function

The instruction `call` rescues the value of `PC+1` onto the stack and sets `FP` and `PC`.

\[
\begin{align*}
SP &= SP + 1; \\
S[SP] &= PC; \\
FP &= SP; \\
PC &= Ri;
\end{align*}
\]
Result of a Function

The global register set is also used to communicate the result value of a function:

\[
\text{code}^i \text{ return } e \rho = \text{code}^i_R e \rho \\
\text{move } R_0 R_i \\
\text{return}
\]
Result of a Function

The global register set is also used to communicate the result value of a function:

\[
\text{code}^i \text{ return } e \rho = \text{code}^i_R e \rho \\
\text{move } R_0 R_i \\
\text{return}
\]

alternative without result value:

\[
\text{code}^i \text{ return } \rho = \text{return}
\]
Result of a Function

The global register set is also used to communicate the result value of a function:

\[
\text{code}^i \ \text{return} \ e \ \rho \ = \ \text{code}^i \ R \ e \ \rho \\
\text{move} \ R_0 \ R_i \\
\text{return}
\]

alternative without result value:

\[
\text{code}^i \ \text{return} \ \rho \ = \ \text{return}
\]

global registers are otherwise not used inside a function body:

- advantage: at any point in the body another function can be called without backing up global registers
- disadvantage: on entering a function, all global registers must be saved
Return from a Function

The instruction `return` relinquishes control of the current stack frame, that is, it restores PC and FP.

\[
\begin{align*}
  \text{PC} &= S[\text{FP}] \\
  \text{SP} &= \text{FP}-2 \\
  \text{FP} &= S[\text{SP}+1]
\end{align*}
\]
Translation of Functions

The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 t_r \ f(\text{args})\{\text{decls} \ ss\} \ \rho \ = \ \text{move} \ R_{l+1} \ R_{-1} \\
\vdots \\
\text{move} \ R_{l+n} \ R_{-n} \\
\text{code}^{l+n+1} \ ss \ \rho' \\
\text{return}
\]

Assumptions:

1. the function has \(n\) parameters
2. the local variables are stored in registers \(R_1, \ldots, R_{l}\)
3. the parameters of the function are in \(R_{-1}, \ldots, R_{-n}\)
4. \(\rho'\) is obtained by extending \(\rho\) with the bindings in \(\text{decls}\) and the function parameters \(\text{args}\)
5. return is not always necessary

Are the move instructions always necessary?
Translation of Functions

The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 \ t_r \ f(\text{args})\{\text{decls} \ ss\} \ \rho \ = \ \begin{align*}
\text{move} \ R_{l+1} & \ R_{-1} \\
: & \\
\text{move} \ R_{l+n} & \ R_{-n} \\
\text{code}^{l+n+1} & \ ss \ \rho' \\
\text{return} & 
\end{align*}
\]

Assumptions:
- the function has \( n \) parameters
Translation of Functions

The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 \ tr \ f(args) \{ \text{decls} \ ss \} \ \rho \ = \ \begin{array}{l}
\text{move} \ R_{l+1} \ R_{-1} \\
\vdots \\
\text{move} \ R_{l+n} \ R_{-n} \\
\text{code}^{l+n+1} \ ss \ \rho' \\
\text{return}
\end{array}
\]

Assumptions:

- the function has \( n \) parameters
- the local variables are stored in registers \( R_1, \ldots R_l \)
The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 \ t_r \ f(args)\{\text{decls} \ ss \} \ \rho \ = \ \begin{array}{l}
\text{move} \ R_{l+1} \ R_{-1} \\
\vdots \\
\text{move} \ R_{l+n} \ R_{-n} \\
\text{code}^{l+n+1} \ ss \ \rho' \\
\text{return}
\end{array}
\]

Assumptions:

- the function has \( n \) parameters
- the local variables are stored in registers \( R_1, \ldots R_l \)
- the parameters of the function are in \( R_{-1}, \ldots R_{-n} \)
Translation of Functions

The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 \ t_r \ f(\text{args})\{\text{decls} \ ss\} \ \rho \ = \ \begin{align*}
&\text{move} \ R_{l+1} \ R_{-1} \\
&\vdots \\
&\text{move} \ R_{l+n} \ R_{-n} \\
&\text{code}^{l+n+1} \ ss \ \rho' \\
&\text{return}
\end{align*}
\]

Assumptions:

- the function has \( n \) parameters
- the local variables are stored in registers \( R_1, \ldots R_l \)
- the parameters of the function are in \( R_{-1}, \ldots R_{-n} \)
- \( \rho' \) is obtained by extending \( \rho \) with the bindings in \( \text{decls} \) and the function parameters \( \text{args} \)
Translation of Functions

The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 \ t_r \ f(\text{args})\{\text{decls} \ ss\} \ \rho = \ \text{move} \ R_{l+1} \ R_{-1} \\
\quad \vdots \\
\quad \text{move} \ R_{l+n} \ R_{-n} \\
\text{code}^{l+n+1} \ ss \ \rho' \\
\text{return}
\]

Assumptions:

- the function has \( n \) parameters
- the local variables are stored in registers \( R_1, \ldots R_l \)
- the parameters of the function are in \( R_{-1}, \ldots R_{-n} \)
- \( \rho' \) is obtained by extending \( \rho \) with the bindings in \( \text{decls} \) and the function parameters \( \text{args} \)
- \text{return} is not always necessary
Translation of Functions

The translation of a function is thus defined as follows:

\[
\text{code}^1 \ t_r \ f(\text{args})\{\text{decls} \ ss\} \ \rho \ = \ \begin{align*}
\text{move} & \ R_{l+1} \ R_{-1} \\
\vdots & \\
\text{move} & \ R_{l+n} \ R_{-n} \\
\text{code}^{l+n+1} & \ ss \ \rho' \\
\text{return} &
\end{align*}
\]

Assumptions:
- the function has \( n \) parameters
- the local variables are stored in registers \( R_1, \ldots R_l \)
- the parameters of the function are in \( R_{-1}, \ldots R_{-n} \)
- \( \rho' \) is obtained by extending \( \rho \) with the bindings in \( \text{decls} \) and the function parameters \( \text{args} \)
- \text{return} is not always necessary

Are the \text{move} instructions always necessary?
A program $P = F_1; \ldots F_n$ must have a single `main` function.

$$\text{code}^1 P \rho = \text{loadc } R_1 \_\text{main}$$

mark

call $R_1$

halt

$_{f_1} : \text{code}^1 F_1 \rho \oplus \rho_{f_1}$

: 

$_{f_n} : \text{code}^1 F_n \rho \oplus \rho_{f_n}$
Translation of Whole Programs

A program $P = F_1; \ldots F_n$ must have a single \texttt{main} function.

\[
\text{code}^{1} P \rho = \begin{align*}
\text{loadc } R_1 & \_\text{main} \\
\text{mark} & \\
\text{call } R_1 & \\
\text{halt} & \\
_\text{f}_1 : & \text{code}^{1} F_1 \rho \oplus \rho_{f_1} \\
& \vdots \\
_\text{f}_n : & \text{code}^{1} F_n \rho \oplus \rho_{f_n}
\end{align*}
\]

Assumptions:

- $\rho = \emptyset$ assuming that we have no global variables
- $\rho_{f_i}$ contain the addresses the local variables
- $\rho_1 \oplus \rho_2 = \lambda x . \begin{cases} 
\rho_2(x) & \text{if } x \in \text{dom}(\rho_2) \\
\rho_1(x) & \text{otherwise}
\end{cases}$
Translation of the \texttt{fac}-function

Consider:

\begin{verbatim}
int fac(int x) {
    if (x<=0) then
        return 1;
    else
        return x*fac(x-1);
}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{fac}: 
\begin{itemize}
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_1 \texttt{R}_1 \\
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{R}_1 \\
    \item \texttt{loadc} \texttt{R}_3 0 \\
    \item \texttt{leq} \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{R}_3 \\
    \item \texttt{jumpz} \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{_A} \\
    \item \texttt{loadc} \texttt{R}_2 1 \\
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_0 \texttt{R}_2 \\
    \item \texttt{return} \\
    \item \texttt{jump} \texttt{_B}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{_A}: 
\begin{itemize}
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{R}_1 \\
    \item \texttt{i} = 3 \\
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_3 \texttt{R}_1 \\
    \item \texttt{i} = 4 \\
    \item \texttt{loadc} \texttt{R}_4 1 \\
    \item \texttt{sub} \texttt{R}_3 \texttt{R}_3 \texttt{R}_4 \\
    \item \texttt{i} = 3 \\
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_1 \texttt{R}_3 \\
    \item \texttt{loadc} \texttt{R}_3 \texttt{_fac} \\
    \item \texttt{saveloc} \texttt{R}_1 \texttt{R}_2 \\
    \item \texttt{mark} \\
    \item \texttt{call} \texttt{R}_3 \\
    \item \texttt{restoreloc} \texttt{R}_1 \texttt{R}_2 \\
    \item \texttt{move} \texttt{R}_3 \texttt{R}_0 \\
    \item \texttt{mul} \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{R}_2 \texttt{R}_3 \\
    \item \texttt{return} \texttt{x*...}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{B}: 
\begin{itemize}
    \item \texttt{return} \texttt{x*...} \\
    \item \texttt{code is dead}
\end{itemize}